



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>C12N 15/57, 9/68, G01N 33/68, C12N 15/85, 5/06, A61K 38/48, C07K 16/40</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 95/29242</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 2 November 1995 (02.11.95)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US95/05107 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 26 April 1995 (26.04.95) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 248,629                      26 April 1994 (26.04.94)                      US 326,785                      20 October 1994 (20.10.94)                      US <b>(71) Applicant:</b> THE CHILDREN'S MEDICAL CENTER CORPORATION [US/US]; 300 Longwood Avenue, Boston, MA 02115 (US). <b>(72) Inventors:</b> O'REILLY, Michael, S.; 336 Main Street, Winchester, MA 01890 (US). FOLKMAN, M., Judah; 18 Chatham Circle, Brookline, MA 02115 (US). SIM, Kim, Lee; 308 Argosy Drive, Gaithersburg, MD 20878 (US). CAO, Yihai; Asogatan 184 4tr, S-116 32 Stockholm (SE). <b>(74) Agents:</b> JOHNSON, James, Dean et al.; Jones & Askew, 37th floor, 191 Peachtree Street, N.E., Atlanta, GA 30303-1769 (US).		<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AM, AT, AU, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TT, UA, UZ, VN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG), ARIPO patent (KE, MW, SD, SZ, UG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.          Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>
<b>(54) Title:</b> ANGIOSTATIN AND METHOD OF USE FOR INHIBITION OF ANGIOGENESIS		
<b>(57) Abstract</b>  <p>The present invention comprises an endothelial inhibitor and method of use therefor. The endothelial inhibitor is a protein isolated from the blood or urine that is eluted as a single peak from C4-reverse phase high performance liquid chromatography. The endothelial inhibitor is a molecule comprising a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a murine plasminogen molecule.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :</b> <b>C12N 15/57, 9/68, G01N 33/68, C12N 15/85, 5/06, A61K 38/48, C07K 16/40</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 95/29242</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 2 November 1995 (02.11.95)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US95/05107 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 26 April 1995 (26.04.95) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 248,629                      26 April 1994 (26.04.94)                      US 326,785                      20 October 1994 (20.10.94)                      US  <b>(71) Applicant:</b> THE CHILDREN'S MEDICAL CENTER CORPORATION [US/US]; 300 Longwood Avenue, Boston, MA 02115 (US).  <b>(72) Inventors:</b> O'REILLY, Michael, S.; 336 Main Street, Winchester, MA 01890 (US). FOLKMAN, M., Judah; 18 Chatham Circle, Brookline, MA 02115 (US). SIM, Kim, Lee; 308 Argosy Drive, Gaithersburg, MD 20878 (US). CAO, Yihai; Asogatan 184 4tr, S-116 32 Stockholm (SE).  <b>(74) Agents:</b> JOHNSON, James, Dean et al.; Jones & Askew, 37th floor, 191 Peachtree Street, N.E., Atlanta, GA 30303-1769 (US).	<b>(81) Designated States:</b> AM, AT, AU, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TM, TT, UA, UZ, VN, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG), ARIPO patent (KE, MW, SD, SZ, UG).  <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>	
<b>(54) Title:</b> ANGIOSTATIN AND METHOD OF USE FOR INHIBITION OF ANGIOGENESIS  <b>(57) Abstract</b> <p>The present invention comprises an endothelial inhibitor and method of use therefor. The endothelial inhibitor is a protein isolated from the blood or urine that is eluted as a single peak from C4-reverse phase high performance liquid chromatography. The endothelial inhibitor is a molecule comprising a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a murine plasminogen molecule.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				



Angiostatin and method of use for inhibition of angiogenesis

5

10

### **Cross-Reference to Related Applications**

This application is a continuation-in-part application of U.S.S.N. 08/326,785, filed October 20, 1994, which is a continuation-in-part of U.S.S.N. filed April 26, 1994.

15

### **Field of the Invention**

The present invention relates to endothelial inhibitors, called angiostatin, which reversibly inhibit proliferation of endothelial cells. More particularly, the present invention relates to angiostatin proteins that can be isolated from body fluids such as blood or urine, or can be synthesized by recombinant, enzymatic or chemical methods. The angiostatin is capable of inhibiting angiogenesis related diseases and modulating angiogenic processes. In addition, the present invention relates to diagnostic assays and kits for angiostatin measurement, to histochemical kits for localization of angiostatin, to DNA sequences coding for angiostatin and molecular probes to monitor angiostatin biosynthesis, to antibodies that are specific for the angiostatin, to the development of peptide agonists and antagonists to the angiostatin receptor, to anti-angiostatin receptor-specific antibody agonists and antagonists, and to cytotoxic agents linked to angiostatin peptides.

35

### Background of the Invention

As used herein, the term "angiogenesis" means the generation of new blood vessels into a tissue or organ. Under normal physiological conditions, humans or animals undergo angiogenesis only in very specific restricted situations. For example, angiogenesis is normally observed in wound healing, fetal and embryonal development and formation of the corpus luteum, endometrium and placenta. The term "endothelium" means a thin layer of flat epithelial cells that lines serous cavities, lymph vessels, and blood vessels.

Both controlled and uncontrolled angiogenesis are thought to proceed in a similar manner. Endothelial cells and pericytes, surrounded by a basement membrane, form capillary blood vessels. Angiogenesis begins with the erosion of the basement membrane by enzymes released by endothelial cells and leukocytes. The endothelial cells, which line the lumen of blood vessels, then protrude through the basement membrane. Angiogenic stimulants induce the endothelial cells to migrate through the eroded basement membrane. The migrating cells form a "sprout" off the parent blood vessel, where the endothelial cells undergo mitosis and proliferate. The endothelial sprouts merge with each other to form capillary loops, creating the new blood vessel.

Persistent, unregulated angiogenesis occurs in a multiplicity of disease states, tumor metastasis and abnormal growth by endothelial cells and supports the pathological damage seen in these conditions. The diverse pathological disease states in which unregulated angiogenesis is present have been grouped together as angiogenic dependent or angiogenic associated diseases.

The hypothesis that tumor growth is angiogenesis-dependent was first proposed in 1971. (Folkman J., Tumor angiogenesis: Therapeutic implications., *N. Engl. Jour. Med.* 285:1182 1186, 1971) In its simplest terms it states: "Once tumor 'take' has occurred, every increase in tumor cell

Angiostatin and method of use for inhibition of angiogenesis

5

10

**Cross-Reference to Related Applications**

This application is a continuation-in-part application of U.S.S.N. 08/326,785, filed October 20, 1994, which is a  
15 continuation-in-part of U.S.S.N. filed April 26, 1994.

**Field of the Invention**

The present invention relates to endothelial inhibitors, called angiostatin, which reversibly inhibit proliferation of  
20 endothelial cells. More particularly, the present invention relates to angiostatin proteins that can be isolated from body fluids such as blood or urine, or can be synthesized by recombinant, enzymatic or chemical methods. The angiostatin is capable of inhibiting angiogenesis related diseases and  
25 modulating angiogenic processes. In addition, the present invention relates to diagnostic assays and kits for angiostatin measurement, to histochemical kits for localization of angiostatin, to DNA sequences coding for angiostatin and molecular probes to monitor angiostatin biosynthesis, to  
30 antibodies that are specific for the angiostatin, to the development of peptide agonists and antagonists to the angiostatin receptor, to anti-angiostatin receptor-specific antibody agonists and antagonists, and to cytotoxic agents linked to angiostatin peptides.  
35

### Background of the Invention

As used herein, the term "angiogenesis" means the generation of new blood vessels into a tissue or organ. Under normal physiological conditions, humans or animals undergo angiogenesis only in very specific restricted situations. For example, angiogenesis is normally observed in wound healing, fetal and embryonal development and formation of the corpus luteum, endometrium and placenta. The term "endothelium" means a thin layer of flat epithelial cells that lines serous cavities, lymph vessels, and blood vessels.

Both controlled and uncontrolled angiogenesis are thought to proceed in a similar manner. Endothelial cells and pericytes, surrounded by a basement membrane, form capillary blood vessels. Angiogenesis begins with the erosion of the basement membrane by enzymes released by endothelial cells and leukocytes. The endothelial cells, which line the lumen of blood vessels, then protrude through the basement membrane. Angiogenic stimulants induce the endothelial cells to migrate through the eroded basement membrane. The migrating cells form a "sprout" off the parent blood vessel, where the endothelial cells undergo mitosis and proliferate. The endothelial sprouts merge with each other to form capillary loops, creating the new blood vessel.

Persistent, unregulated angiogenesis occurs in a multiplicity of disease states, tumor metastasis and abnormal growth by endothelial cells and supports the pathological damage seen in these conditions. The diverse pathological disease states in which unregulated angiogenesis is present have been grouped together as angiogenic dependent or angiogenic associated diseases.

The hypothesis that tumor growth is angiogenesis-dependent was first proposed in 1971. (Folkman J., Tumor angiogenesis: Therapeutic implications., *N. Engl. Jour. Med.* 285:1182 1186, 1971) In its simplest terms it states: "Once tumor 'take' has occurred, every increase in tumor cell

population must be preceded by an increase in new capillaries converging on the tumor." Tumor 'take' is currently understood to indicate a prevascular phase of tumor growth in which a population of tumor cells occupying a few cubic millimeters volume and not exceeding a few million cells, can survive on existing host microvessels. Expansion of tumor volume beyond this phase requires the induction of new capillary blood vessels. For example, pulmonary micrometastases in the early prevascular phase in mice would be undetectable except by high power microscopy on histological sections.

Examples of the indirect evidence which support this concept include:

(1) The growth rate of tumors implanted in subcutaneous transparent chambers in mice is slow and linear before neovascularization, and rapid and nearly exponential after neovascularization. (Algire GH, *et al.* Vascular reactions of normal and malignant tumors *in vivo*. I. Vascular reactions of mice to wounds and to normal and neoplastic transplants. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 6:73-85, 1945)

(2) Tumors grown in isolated perfused organs where blood vessels do not proliferate are limited to 1-2 mm<sup>3</sup> but expand rapidly to >1000 times this volume when they are transplanted to mice and become neovascularized. (Folkman J, *et al.*, Tumor behavior in isolated perfused organs: *In vitro* growth and metastasis of biopsy material in rabbit thyroid and canine intestinal segments. *Annals of Surgery* 164:491-502, 1966)

(3) Tumor growth in the avascular cornea proceeds slowly and at a linear rate, but switches to exponential growth after neovascularization. (Gimbrone, M.A., Jr. *et al.*, Tumor growth and neovascularization: An experimental model using the rabbit cornea. *J. Natl. Cancer Institute* 52:41-427, 1974)

(4) Tumors suspended in the aqueous fluid of the anterior chamber of the rabbit eye, remain viable, avascular

and limited in size to  $< 1 \text{ mm}^3$ . Once they are implanted on the iris vascular bed, they become neovascularized and grow rapidly, reaching 16,000 times their original volume within 2 weeks. (Gimbrone MA Jr., *et al.*, Tumor dormancy *in vivo* by prevention of neovascularization. *J. Exp. Med.* 136:261-276)

(5) When tumors are implanted on the chick embryo chorioallantoic membrane, they grow slowly during an avascular phase of  $>72$  hours, but do not exceed a mean diameter of  $0.93 + 0.29 \text{ mm}$ . Rapid tumor expansion occurs within 24 hours after the onset of neovascularization, and by day 7 these vascularized tumors reach a mean diameter of  $8.0 + 2.5 \text{ mm}$ . (Knighton D., Avascular and vascular phases of tumor growth in the chick embryo. *British J. Cancer*, 35:347-356, 1977)

(6) Vascular casts of metastases in the rabbit liver reveal heterogeneity in size of the metastases, but show a relatively uniform cut-off point for the size at which vascularization is present. Tumors are generally avascular up to 1 mm in diameter, but are neovascularized beyond that diameter. (Lien W., *et al.*, The blood supply of experimental liver metastases. II. A microcirculatory study of normal and tumor vessels of the liver with the use of perfused silicone rubber. *Surgery* 68:334-340, 1970)

(7) In transgenic mice which develop carcinomas in the beta cells of the pancreatic islets, pre-vascular hyperplastic islets are limited in size to  $< 1 \text{ mm}$ . At 6-7 weeks of age, 4-10% of the islets become neovascularized, and from these islets arise large vascularized tumors of more than 1000 times the volume of the pre-vascular islets. (Folkman J, *et al.*, Induction of angiogenesis during the transition from hyperplasia to neoplasia. *Nature* 339:58-61, 1989)

(8) A specific antibody against VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor) reduces microvessel density and causes "significant or dramatic" inhibition of growth of three

population must be preceded by an increase in new capillaries converging on the tumor." Tumor 'take' is currently understood to indicate a prevascular phase of tumor growth in which a population of tumor cells occupying a few cubic millimeters volume and not exceeding a few million cells, can survive on existing host microvessels. Expansion of tumor volume beyond this phase requires the induction of new capillary blood vessels. For example, pulmonary micrometastases in the early prevascular phase in mice would be undetectable except by high power microscopy on histological sections.

Examples of the indirect evidence which support this concept include:

(1) The growth rate of tumors implanted in subcutaneous transparent chambers in mice is slow and linear before neovascularization, and rapid and nearly exponential after neovascularization. (Algire GH, *et al.* Vascular reactions of normal and malignant tumors *in vivo*. I. Vascular reactions of mice to wounds and to normal and neoplastic transplants. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 6:73-85, 1945)

(2) Tumors grown in isolated perfused organs where blood vessels do not proliferate are limited to 1-2 mm<sup>3</sup> but expand rapidly to >1000 times this volume when they are transplanted to mice and become neovascularized. (Folkman J, *et al.*, Tumor behavior in isolated perfused organs: *In vitro* growth and metastasis of biopsy material in rabbit thyroid and canine intestinal segments. *Annals of Surgery* 164:491-502, 1966)

(3) Tumor growth in the avascular cornea proceeds slowly and at a linear rate, but switches to exponential growth after neovascularization. (Gimbrone, M.A., Jr. *et al.*, Tumor growth and neovascularization: An experimental model using the rabbit cornea. *J. Natl. Cancer Institute* 52:41-427, 1974)

(4) Tumors suspended in the aqueous fluid of the anterior chamber of the rabbit eye, remain viable, avascular

and limited in size to  $< 1 \text{ mm}^3$ . Once they are implanted on the iris vascular bed, they become neovascularized and grow rapidly, reaching 16,000 times their original volume within 2 weeks. (Gimbrone MA Jr., *et al.*, Tumor dormancy *in vivo* by prevention of neovascularization. *J. Exp. Med.* 136:261-276)

(5) When tumors are implanted on the chick embryo chorioallantoic membrane, they grow slowly during an avascular phase of  $>72$  hours, but do not exceed a mean diameter of  $0.93 \pm 0.29 \text{ mm}$ . Rapid tumor expansion occurs within 24 hours after the onset of neovascularization, and by day 7 these vascularized tumors reach a mean diameter of  $8.0 \pm 2.5 \text{ mm}$ . (Knighton D., Avascular and vascular phases of tumor growth in the chick embryo. *British J. Cancer*, 35:347-356, 1977)

(6) Vascular casts of metastases in the rabbit liver reveal heterogeneity in size of the metastases, but show a relatively uniform cut-off point for the size at which vascularization is present. Tumors are generally avascular up to 1 mm in diameter, but are neovascularized beyond that diameter. (Lien W., *et al.*, The blood supply of experimental liver metastases. II. A microcirculatory study of normal and tumor vessels of the liver with the use of perfused silicone rubber. *Surgery* 68:334-340, 1970)

(7) In transgenic mice which develop carcinomas in the beta cells of the pancreatic islets, pre-vascular hyperplastic islets are limited in size to  $< 1 \text{ mm}$ . At 6-7 weeks of age, 4-10% of the islets become neovascularized, and from these islets arise large vascularized tumors of more than 1000 times the volume of the pre-vascular islets. (Folkman J, *et al.*, Induction of angiogenesis during the transition from hyperplasia to neoplasia. *Nature* 339:58-61, 1989)

(8) A specific antibody against VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor) reduces microvessel density and causes "significant or dramatic" inhibition of growth of three



human tumors which rely on VEGF as their sole mediator of angiogenesis (in nude mice). The antibody does not inhibit growth of the tumor cells *in vitro*. (Kim K J, *et al.*, Inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor-induced angiogenesis suppresses tumor growth *in vivo*. *Nature* 362:841-844, 1993)

(9) Anti-bFGF monoclonal antibody causes 70% inhibition of growth of a mouse tumor which is dependent upon secretion of bFGF as its only mediator of angiogenesis. The antibody does not inhibit growth of the tumor cells *in vitro*. (Hori A, *et al.*, Suppression of solid tumor growth by immunoneutralizing monoclonal antibody against human basic fibroblast growth factor. *Cancer Research*, 51:6180-6184, 1991)

(10) Intraperitoneal injection of bFGF enhances growth of a primary tumor and its metastases by stimulating growth of capillary endothelial cells in the tumor. The tumor cells themselves lack receptors for bFGF, and bFGF is not a mitogen for the tumors cells *in vitro*. (Gross JL, *et al.* Modulation of solid tumor growth *in vivo* by bFGF. *Proc. Amer. Assoc. Canc. Res.* 31:79, 1990)

(11 ) A specific angiogenesis inhibitor (AGM-1470) inhibits tumor growth and metastases *in vivo*, but is much less active in inhibiting tumor cell proliferation *in vitro*. It inhibits vascular endothelial cell proliferation half-maximally at 4 logs lower concentration than it inhibits tumor cell proliferation. (Ingber D, *et al.*, Angiogenesis inhibitors: Synthetic analogues of fumagillin which inhibit angiogenesis and suppress tumor growth. *Nature*, 48:555-557, 1990). There is also indirect clinical evidence that tumor growth is angiogenesis dependent.

(12) Human retinoblastomas that are metastatic to the vitreous develop into avascular spheroids which are restricted to less than 1 mm<sup>3</sup> despite the fact that they are viable and incorporate <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine (when removed from an enucleated eye and analyzed *in vitro*).

(13) Carcinoma of the ovary metastasizes to the peritoneal membrane as tiny avascular white seeds (1-3 mm<sup>3</sup>). These implants rarely grow larger until one or more of them becomes neovascularized.

5 (14) Intensity of neovascularization in breast cancer (Weidner N, *et al.*, Tumor angiogenesis correlates with metastasis in invasive breast carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 324:1-8, 1991, and Weidner N, *et al.*, Tumor angiogenesis: A new significant and independent prognostic indicator in early-stage breast carcinoma, *J Natl. Cancer Inst.* 84:1875-1887, 1992) and in prostate cancer (Weidner N, Carroll PR, Flax J, Blumenfeld W, Folkman J. Tumor angiogenesis correlates with metastasis in invasive prostate carcinoma. *American Journal of Pathology*, 143(2):401-409, 1993) correlates highly with risk of future metastasis.

15 (15) Metastasis from human cutaneous melanoma is rare prior to neovascularization. The onset of neovascularization leads to increased thickness of the lesion and an increasing risk of metastasis. (Srivastava A, *et al.*, The prognostic significance of tumor vascularity in intermediate thickness (0.76-4.0 mm thick) skin melanoma. *Amer. J. Pathol.* 133:419-423, 1988)

20 (16) In bladder cancer, the urinary level of an angiogenic peptide, bFGF, is a more sensitive indicator of status and extent of disease than is cytology. (Nguyen M, *et al.*, Elevated levels of an angiogenic peptide, basic fibroblast growth factor, in urine of bladder cancer patients. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 85:241-242, 1993)

25 Thus, it is clear that angiogenesis plays a major role in the metastasis of a cancer. If this angiogenic activity could be repressed or eliminated, then the tumor, although present, would not grow. In the disease state, prevention of angiogenesis could avert the damage caused by the invasion of the new microvascular system. Therapies directed at control

30

human tumors which rely on VEGF as their sole mediator of angiogenesis (in nude mice). The antibody does not inhibit growth of the tumor cells *in vitro*. (Kim K J, *et al.*, Inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor-induced angiogenesis suppresses tumor growth *in vivo*. *Nature* 362:841-844, 1993)

(9) Anti-bFGF monoclonal antibody causes 70% inhibition of growth of a mouse tumor which is dependent upon secretion of bFGF as its only mediator of angiogenesis. The antibody does not inhibit growth of the tumor cells *in vitro*. (Hori A, *et al.*, Suppression of solid tumor growth by immunoneutralizing monoclonal antibody against human basic fibroblast growth factor. *Cancer Research*, 51:6180-6184, 1991)

(10) Intraperitoneal injection of bFGF enhances growth of a primary tumor and its metastases by stimulating growth of capillary endothelial cells in the tumor. The tumor cells themselves lack receptors for bFGF, and bFGF is not a mitogen for the tumors cells *in vitro*. (Gross JL, *et al.* Modulation of solid tumor growth *in vivo* by bFGF. *Proc. Amer. Assoc. Canc. Res.* 31:79, 1990)

(11 ) A specific angiogenesis inhibitor (AGM-1470) inhibits tumor growth and metastases *in vivo*, but is much less active in inhibiting tumor cell proliferation *in vitro*. It inhibits vascular endothelial cell proliferation half-maximally at 4 logs lower concentration than it inhibits tumor cell proliferation. (Ingber D, *et al.*, Angiostatin: Synthetic analogues of fumagillin which inhibit angiogenesis and suppress tumor growth. *Nature*, 48:555-557, 1990). There is also indirect clinical evidence that tumor growth is angiogenesis dependent.

(12) Human retinoblastomas that are metastatic to the vitreous develop into avascular spheroids which are restricted to less than 1 mm<sup>3</sup> despite the fact that they are viable and incorporate <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine (when removed from an enucleated eye and analyzed *in vitro*).

(13) Carcinoma of the ovary metastasizes to the peritoneal membrane as tiny avascular white seeds (1-3 mm<sup>3</sup>). These implants rarely grow larger until one or more of them becomes neovascularized.

5 (14) Intensity of neovascularization in breast cancer (Weidner N, *et al.*, Tumor angiogenesis correlates with metastasis in invasive breast carcinoma. *N. Engl. J. Med.* 324:1-8, 1991, and Weidner N, *et al.*, Tumor angiogenesis: A new significant and independent prognostic indicator in early-stage breast carcinoma, *J Natl. Cancer Inst.* 84:1875-1887, 1992) and in prostate cancer (Weidner N, Carroll PR, Flax J, Blumenfeld W, Folkman J. Tumor angiogenesis correlates with metastasis in invasive prostate carcinoma. *American Journal of Pathology*, 143(2):401-409, 1993) correlates highly with risk of future metastasis.

15 (15) Metastasis from human cutaneous melanoma is rare prior to neovascularization. The onset of neovascularization leads to increased thickness of the lesion and an increasing risk of metastasis. (Srivastava A, *et al.*, The prognostic significance of tumor vascularity in intermediate thickness (0.76-4.0 mm thick) skin melanoma. *Amer. J. Pathol.* 133:419-423, 1988)

20 (16) In bladder cancer, the urinary level of an angiogenic peptide, bFGF, is a more sensitive indicator of status and extent of disease than is cytology. (Nguyen M, *et al.*, Elevated levels of an angiogenic peptide, basic fibroblast growth factor, in urine of bladder cancer patients. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 85:241-242, 1993)

25 Thus, it is clear that angiogenesis plays a major role in the metastasis of a cancer. If this angiogenic activity could be repressed or eliminated, then the tumor, although present, would not grow. In the disease state, prevention of angiogenesis could avert the damage caused by the invasion of the new microvascular system. Therapies directed at control

30

of the angiogenic processes could lead to the abrogation or mitigation of these diseases.

5           What is needed therefore is a composition and method which can inhibit the unwanted growth of blood vessels, especially into tumors. Also needed is a method for detecting, measuring, and localizing the composition. The composition should be able to overcome the activity of endogenous growth factors in premetastatic tumors and prevent the formation of the capillaries in the tumors thereby inhibiting the growth of the tumors. The composition, fragments of the composition, and antibodies specific to the composition, should also be able to modulate the formation of capillaries in other angiogenic processes, such as wound healing and reproduction. The composition and method for inhibiting angiogenesis should preferably be non-toxic and produce few side effects. Also needed is a method for detecting, measuring, and localizing the binding sites for the composition as well as sites of biosynthesis of the composition. The composition and fragments of the composition should be capable of being conjugated to other molecules for both radioactive and non-radioactive labeling purposes

10  
15  
20

#### Summary of the Invention

25           In accordance with the present invention, compositions and methods are provided that are effective for modulating angiogenesis, and inhibiting unwanted angiogenesis, especially angiogenesis related to tumor growth. The present invention includes a protein, which has been named "angiostatin", defined by its ability to overcome the angiogenic activity of endogenous growth factors such as bFGF, *in vitro*, and by its amino acid sequence homology and structural similarity to an internal portion of plasminogen beginning at approximately plasminogen amino acid 98. Angiostatin comprises a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing

30  
35

polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a fragment of murine plasminogen beginning at amino acid number 98 of an intact murine plasminogen molecule (SEQ ID NO:2).

5           The amino acid sequence of angiostatin varies slightly between species. For example, in human angiostatin the amino acid sequence is substantially similar to the sequence of the above described murine plasminogen fragment, although an active human angiostatin sequence may start at either amino  
10       acid number 97 or 99 of an intact human plasminogen amino acid sequence. Further, fragments of human plasminogen has similar anti-angiogenic activity as shown in a mouse tumor model. It is to be understood that the number of amino acids in the active angiostatin molecule may vary and all amino acid  
15       sequences that have endothelial inhibiting activity are contemplated as being included in the present invention.

          The present invention provides methods and compositions for treating diseases and processes mediated by undesired and uncontrolled angiogenesis by administering to a  
20       human or animal a composition comprising a substantially purified angiostatin or angiostatin derivative in a dosage sufficient to inhibit angiogenesis. The present invention is particularly useful for treating, or for repressing the growth of, tumors. Administration of angiostatin to a human or  
25       animal with prevascularized metastasized tumors will prevent the growth or expansion of those tumors.

          The present invention also encompasses DNA sequences encoding angiostatin, expression vectors containing DNA sequences encoding angiostatin, and cells containing one or  
30       more expression vectors containing DNA sequences encoding angiostatin. The present invention further encompasses gene therapy methods whereby DNA sequences encoding angiostatin are introduced into a patient to modify *in vivo* angiostatin levels.

of the angiogenic processes could lead to the abrogation or mitigation of these diseases.

5           What is needed therefore is a composition and method which can inhibit the unwanted growth of blood vessels, especially into tumors. Also needed is a method for detecting, measuring, and localizing the composition. The composition  
10           should be able to overcome the activity of endogenous growth factors in premetastatic tumors and prevent the formation of the capillaries in the tumors thereby inhibiting the growth of the tumors. The composition, fragments of the composition, and antibodies specific to the composition, should also be able to modulate the formation of capillaries in other angiogenic processes, such as wound healing and reproduction. The  
15           composition and method for inhibiting angiogenesis should preferably be non-toxic and produce few side effects. Also needed is a method for detecting, measuring, and localizing the binding sites for the composition as well as sites of biosynthesis of the composition. The composition and fragments of the  
20           composition should be capable of being conjugated to other molecules for both radioactive and non-radioactive labeling purposes

### Summary of the Invention

25           In accordance with the present invention, compositions and methods are provided that are effective for modulating angiogenesis, and inhibiting unwanted angiogenesis, especially angiogenesis related to tumor growth. The present invention includes a protein, which has been named "angiostatin", defined by its ability to overcome the angiogenic activity of  
30           endogenous growth factors such as bFGF, *in vitro*, and by its amino acid sequence homology and structural similarity to an internal portion of plasminogen beginning at approximately plasminogen amino acid 98. Angiostatin comprises a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38  
35           kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing

polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a fragment of murine plasminogen beginning at amino acid number 98 of an intact murine plasminogen molecule (SEQ ID NO:2).

5           The amino acid sequence of angiostatin varies slightly between species. For example, in human angiostatin the amino acid sequence is substantially similar to the sequence of the above described murine plasminogen fragment, although an active human angiostatin sequence may start at either amino  
10       acid number 97 or 99 of an intact human plasminogen amino acid sequence. Further, fragments of human plasminogen has similar anti-angiogenic activity as shown in a mouse tumor model. It is to be understood that the number of amino acids in the active angiostatin molecule may vary and all amino acid  
15       sequences that have endothelial inhibiting activity are contemplated as being included in the present invention.

          The present invention provides methods and compositions for treating diseases and processes mediated by undesired and uncontrolled angiogenesis by administering to  
20       a human or animal a composition comprising a substantially purified angiostatin or angiostatin derivative in a dosage sufficient to inhibit angiogenesis. The present invention is particularly useful for treating, or for repressing the growth of, tumors. Administration of angiostatin to a human or  
25       animal with prevascularized metastasized tumors will prevent the growth or expansion of those tumors.

          The present invention also encompasses DNA sequences encoding angiostatin, expression vectors containing DNA sequences encoding angiostatin, and cells containing one or  
30       more expression vectors containing DNA sequences encoding angiostatin. The present invention further encompasses gene therapy methods whereby DNA sequences encoding angiostatin are introduced into a patient to modify *in vivo* angiostatin levels.



5 The present invention also includes diagnostic methods and kits for detection and measurement of angiostatin in biological fluids and tissues, and for localization of angiostatin in tissues and cells. The diagnostic method and kit can be in any configuration well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The present invention also includes antibodies specific for the angiostatin molecule and portions thereof, and antibodies that inhibit the binding of antibodies specific for the angiostatin. These antibodies can be polyclonal antibodies or  
10 monoclonal antibodies. The antibodies specific for the angiostatin can be used in diagnostic kits to detect the presence and quantity of angiostatin which is diagnostic or prognostic for the occurrence or recurrence of cancer or other disease mediated by angiogenesis. Antibodies specific for angiostatin  
15 may also be administered to a human or animal to passively immunize the human or animal against angiostatin, thereby reducing angiogenic inhibition.

20 The present invention also includes diagnostic methods and kits for detecting the presence and quantity of antibodies that bind angiostatin in body fluids. The diagnostic method and kit can be in any configuration well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

25 The present invention also includes anti-angiostatin receptor-specific antibodies that bind to the angiostatin receptor and transmit the appropriate signal to the cell and act as agonists or antagonists.

30 The present invention also includes angiostatin peptide fragments and analogs that can be labeled isotopically or with other molecules or proteins for use in the detection and visualization of angiostatin binding sites with techniques, including, but not limited to, positron emission tomography, autoradiography, flow cytometry, radioreceptor binding assays, and immunohistochemistry.

35 These angiostatin peptides and analogs also act as agonists and antagonists at the angiostatin receptor, thereby

enhancing or blocking the biological activity of angiostatin. Such peptides are used in the isolation of the angiostatin receptor.

5 The present invention also includes angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, or angiostatin receptor agonists and angiostatin receptor antagonists linked to cytotoxic agents for therapeutic and research applications. Still further, angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, angiostatin receptor agonists and angiostatin receptor  
10 antagonists are combined with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, and optionally sustained-release compounds or compositions, such as biodegradable polymers, to form therapeutic compositions.

15 The present invention includes molecular probes for the ribonucleic acid and deoxyribonucleic acid involved in transcription and translation of angiostatin. These molecular probes provide means to detect and measure angiostatin biosynthesis in tissues and cells.

20 Accordingly, it is an object of the present invention to provide a composition comprising an angiostatin.

It is another object of the present invention to provide a method of treating diseases and processes that are mediated by angiogenesis.

25 It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a diagnostic or prognostic method and kit for detecting the presence and amount of angiostatin in a body fluid or tissue.

It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a method and composition for treating diseases and  
30 processes that are mediated by angiogenesis including, but not limited to, hemangioma, solid tumors, blood borne tumors, leukemia, metastasis, telangiectasia, psoriasis, scleroderma, pyogenic granuloma, myocardial angiogenesis, Crohn's disease, plaque neovascularization, coronary collaterals, cerebral collaterals, arteriovenous malformations, ischemic  
35

5       The present invention also includes diagnostic methods and kits for detection and measurement of angiostatin in biological fluids and tissues, and for localization of angiostatin in tissues and cells. The diagnostic method and kit can be in any configuration well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. The present invention also includes antibodies specific for the angiostatin molecule and portions thereof, and antibodies that inhibit the binding of antibodies specific for the angiostatin. These antibodies can be polyclonal antibodies or  
10       monoclonal antibodies. The antibodies specific for the angiostatin can be used in diagnostic kits to detect the presence and quantity of angiostatin which is diagnostic or prognostic for the occurrence or recurrence of cancer or other disease mediated by angiogenesis. Antibodies specific for angiostatin  
15       may also be administered to a human or animal to passively immunize the human or animal against angiostatin, thereby reducing angiogenic inhibition.

20       The present invention also includes diagnostic methods and kits for detecting the presence and quantity of antibodies that bind angiostatin in body fluids. The diagnostic method and kit can be in any configuration well known to those of ordinary skill in the art.

25       The present invention also includes anti-angiostatin receptor-specific antibodies that bind to the angiostatin receptor and transmit the appropriate signal to the cell and act as agonists or antagonists.

30       The present invention also includes angiostatin peptide fragments and analogs that can be labeled isotopically or with other molecules or proteins for use in the detection and visualization of angiostatin binding sites with techniques, including, but not limited to, positron emission tomography, autoradiography, flow cytometry, radioreceptor binding assays, and immunohistochemistry.

35       These angiostatin peptides and analogs also act as agonists and antagonists at the angiostatin receptor, thereby

enhancing or blocking the biological activity of angiostatin. Such peptides are used in the isolation of the angiostatin receptor.

5 The present invention also includes angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, or angiostatin receptor agonists and angiostatin receptor antagonists linked to cytotoxic agents for therapeutic and research applications. Still further, angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, angiostatin receptor agonists and angiostatin receptor antagonists are combined with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, and optionally sustained-release compounds or compositions, such as biodegradable polymers, to form therapeutic compositions.

10 The present invention includes molecular probes for the ribonucleic acid and deoxyribonucleic acid involved in transcription and translation of angiostatin. These molecular probes provide means to detect and measure angiostatin biosynthesis in tissues and cells.

15 Accordingly, it is an object of the present invention to provide a composition comprising an angiostatin.

20 It is another object of the present invention to provide a method of treating diseases and processes that are mediated by angiogenesis.

25 It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a diagnostic or prognostic method and kit for detecting the presence and amount of angiostatin in a body fluid or tissue.

30 It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a method and composition for treating diseases and processes that are mediated by angiogenesis including, but not limited to, hemangioma, solid tumors, blood borne tumors, leukemia, metastasis, telangiectasia, psoriasis, scleroderma, pyogenic granuloma, myocardial angiogenesis, Crohn's disease, plaque neovascularization, coronary collaterals, cerebral collaterals, arteriovenous malformations, ischemic

35

5      limb angiogenesis, corneal diseases, rubeosis, neovascular glaucoma, diabetic retinopathy, retrolental fibroplasia, arthritis, diabetic neovascularization, macular degeneration, wound healing, peptic ulcer, *Helicobacter* related diseases, fractures, keloids, vasculogenesis, hematopoiesis, ovulation, menstruation, placentation, and cat scratch fever.

        It is another object of the present invention to provide a composition for treating or repressing the growth of a cancer.

10      It is an object of the present invention to provide compounds that modulate or mimic the production or activity of enzymes that produce angiostatin *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

15      It is a further object of the present invention to provide angiostatin or anti-angiostatin antibodies by direct injection of angiostatin DNA into a human or animal needing such angiostatin or anti-angiostatin antibodies.

        It is an object of present invention to provide a method for detecting and quantifying the presence of an antibody specific for an angiostatin in a body fluid.

20      Still another object of the present invention is to provide a composition consisting of antibodies to angiostatin that are selective for specific regions of the angiostatin molecule that do not recognize plasminogen.

        It is another object of the present invention to provide a method for the detection or prognosis of cancer.

25      It is another object of the present invention to provide a composition for use in visualizing and quantitating sites of angiostatin binding *in vivo* and *in vitro*.

30      It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a composition for use in detection and quantification of angiostatin biosynthesis.

        It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a therapy for cancer that has minimal side effects.

        Still another object of the present invention is to provide a composition comprising angiostatin or an angiostatin peptide

linked to a cytotoxic agent for treating or repressing the growth of a cancer.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a method for targeted delivery of angiostatin-related compositions to specific locations.

Yet another object of the invention is to provide compositions and methods useful for gene therapy for the modulation of angiogenic processes.

These and other objects, features and advantages of the present invention will become apparent after a review of the following detailed description of the disclosed embodiments and the appended claims.

#### Brief Description of the Figures

Figure 1 shows SEQ ID NO:1, the amino acid sequence of the whole murine plasminogen.

Figure 2 shows the beginning sequence of the angiostatin for murine (SEQ ID NO:2) and compares the murine sequence with corresponding human (SEQ ID NO:3), Rhesus monkey (SEQ ID NO:4), porcine (SEQ ID NO:5) and bovine (SEQ ID NO:6) plasminogen peptide fragments. The mouse sequence is listed first, followed by human, Rhesus, porcine and bovine.

Figure 3 shows BrdU labeling index of tumor cells in the lung in the presence or absence of a primary tumor.

Figure 4 shows Matrigel analysis of the influence of a Lewis lung primary tumor on bFGF driven angiogenesis *in vivo*.

Figure 5 shows dose response curve for serum derived from mice bearing Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC-Low) versus serum from normal mice. Bovine capillary endothelial cells were assayed in a bFGF-driven 72-hour proliferation assay.

Figure 6 shows that both low and high metastatic tumors contain endothelial mitogenic activity in their ascites, but only the low metastatic tumor line has endothelial inhibitory activity in the serum.

5      limb angiogenesis, corneal diseases, rubeosis, neovascular glaucoma, diabetic retinopathy, retrolental fibroplasia, arthritis, diabetic neovascularization, macular degeneration, wound healing, peptic ulcer, *Helicobacter* related diseases, fractures, keloids, vasculogenesis, hematopoiesis, ovulation, menstruation, placentation, and cat scratch fever.

        It is another object of the present invention to provide a composition for treating or repressing the growth of a cancer.

10      It is an object of the present invention to provide compounds that modulate or mimic the production or activity of enzymes that produce angiostatin *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

15      It is a further object of the present invention to provide angiostatin or anti-angiostatin antibodies by direct injection of angiostatin DNA into a human or animal needing such angiostatin or anti-angiostatin antibodies.

        It is an object of present invention to provide a method for detecting and quantifying the presence of an antibody specific for an angiostatin in a body fluid.

20      Still another object of the present invention is to provide a composition consisting of antibodies to angiostatin that are selective for specific regions of the angiostatin molecule that do not recognize plasminogen.

        It is another object of the present invention to provide a method for the detection or prognosis of cancer.

25      It is another object of the present invention to provide a composition for use in visualizing and quantitating sites of angiostatin binding *in vivo* and *in vitro*.

30      It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a composition for use in detection and quantification of angiostatin biosynthesis.

        It is yet another object of the present invention to provide a therapy for cancer that has minimal side effects.

        Still another object of the present invention is to provide a composition comprising angiostatin or an angiostatin peptide

linked to a cytotoxic agent for treating or repressing the growth of a cancer.

Another object of the present invention is to provide a method for targeted delivery of angiostatin-related compositions to specific locations.

Yet another object of the invention is to provide compositions and methods useful for gene therapy for the modulation of angiogenic processes.

These and other objects, features and advantages of the present invention will become apparent after a review of the following detailed description of the disclosed embodiments and the appended claims.

#### **Brief Description of the Figures**

Figure 1 shows SEQ ID NO:1, the amino acid sequence of the whole murine plasminogen.

Figure 2 shows the beginning sequence of the angiostatin for murine (SEQ ID NO:2) and compares the murine sequence with corresponding human (SEQ ID NO:3), Rhesus monkey (SEQ ID NO:4), porcine (SEQ ID NO:5) and bovine (SEQ ID NO:6) plasminogen peptide fragments. The mouse sequence is listed first, followed by human, Rhesus, porcine and bovine.

Figure 3 shows BrdU labeling index of tumor cells in the lung in the presence or absence of a primary tumor.

Figure 4 shows Matrigel analysis of the influence of a Lewis lung primary tumor on bFGF driven angiogenesis *in vivo*.

Figure 5 shows dose response curve for serum derived from mice bearing Lewis lung carcinoma (LLC-Low) versus serum from normal mice. Bovine capillary endothelial cells were assayed in a bFGF-driven 72-hour proliferation assay.

Figure 6 shows that both low and high metastatic tumors contain endothelial mitogenic activity in their ascites, but only the low metastatic tumor line has endothelial inhibitory activity in the serum.



Figure 7 shows a C4 Reverse Phase Chromatographic profile of partially purified serum or urine from tumor-bearing animals.

5        Figure 8 shows surface lung metastases after the 13 day treatment of mice with intact plasminogen molecule, active fraction from a lysine binding site I preparation of human plasminogen, concentrated urine from tumor bearing mice and concentrated urine from normal mice.

10       Figure 9 shows lung weight after the 13 day treatment of mice with intact plasminogen molecule of human plasminogen, active fraction from lysine binding site I preparation, concentrated urine from tumor bearing mice and concentrated urine from normal mice.

15       Figure 10 is a schematic representation of the pTrcHis vector.

20       Figure 11 depicts an immunoblot of E.coli expressed human angiostatin from a 10L scaled-up fermentation, probed with monoclonal antibody against human plasminogen kringle region 1-3. Arrow shows recombinant human angiostatin. A) shows recombinant angiostatin eluted with 0.2 M amino caproic acid; B) shows the last wash with 1 X PBS of the lysine column; and C) shows clarified lysate from cracked cells.

25       Figure 12. Is a graph depicting percent inhibition of growing bovine capillary endothelial cells as a function of dilution of stock; A1, A2, B1, B2, and E are recombinant clones that express human angiostatin anit-angiogenesis activity; C1, C2, D1 and D2 controls are negative controls clones containing vector only without the human DNA sequence coding for angiostatin.

30       Figure 13 shows the inhibitory effect on proliferation of recombinant human angiostatin on bovine capillary endothelial cells *in vitro*.

Figure 14 shows the growth proliferation index and apoptotic index after removal of the primary tumor and

treatment with saline or a fumagillin analogue with anti-angiogenic activity

5       Figure 15 shows the inhibition of growth of a T241 primary tumor in mice by treatment with human angiostatin *in vivo* with a single injection of 40 mg/kg/day.

Figure 16 shows the inhibition of growth of a LLC-LM primary tumor in mice by treatment with human angiostatin *in vivo* at two doses of 40 mg/kg per dose (80 mg/kg/day).

10       Figure 17 shows the effect of the removal of a Lewis lung carcinoma primary tumor on the growth of its lung metastases.

Figure 18 shows the growth proliferation and apoptotic index after tumor resection

15       Figure 19 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to mice having implated T241 fibrosarcoma cells on total tumor volume as a function of time.

20       Figure 20 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to mice having implated Lewis lung carcinoma (LM) cells on total tumor volume as a function of time.

Figure 21 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to mice having implated reticulum cell sarcoma cells on total tumor volume as a function of time.

25       Figure 22 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to immunodeficient SCID mice having implated human prostate carcinoma PC-3 cells on total tumor volume as a function of time over a 24 day period.

30       Figure 23 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to immunodeficient SCID mice having implated human breast carcinoma MDA-MB cells on total tumor volume as a function of time over a 24 day period.

35       Figure 24 is a schematic representation of cloning of the mouse DNA sequence coding for mouse angiostatin protein derived from mouse plasminogen cDNA. The mouse angiostatin encompasses mouse plasminogen kringle regions 1-

Figure 7 shows a C4 Reverse Phase Chromatographic profile of partially purified serum or urine from tumor-bearing animals.

5        Figure 8 shows surface lung metastases after the 13 day treatment of mice with intact plasminogen molecule, active fraction from a lysine binding site I preparation of human plasminogen, concentrated urine from tumor bearing mice and concentrated urine from normal mice.

10       Figure 9 shows lung weight after the 13 day treatment of mice with intact plasminogen molecule of human plasminogen, active fraction from lysine binding site I preparation, concentrated urine from tumor bearing mice and concentrated urine from normal mice.

15       Figure 10 is a schematic representation of the pTrcHis vector.

20       Figure 11 depicts an immunoblot of E.coli expressed human angiostatin from a 10L scaled-up fermentation, probed with monoclonal antibody against human plasminogen kringle region 1-3. Arrow shows recombinant human angiostatin. A) shows recombinant angiostatin eluted with 0.2 M amino caproic acid; B) shows the last wash with 1 X PBS of the lysine column; and C) shows clarified lysate from cracked cells.

25       Figure 12. Is a graph depicting percent inhibition of growing bovine capillary endothelial cells as a function of dilution of stock; A1, A2, B1, B2, and E are recombinant clones that express human angiostatin anit-angiogenesis activity; C1, C2, D1 and D2 controls are negative controls clones containing vector only without the human DNA sequence coding for angiostatin.

30       Figure 13 shows the inhibitory effect on proliferation of recombinant human angiostatin on bovine capillary endothelial cells *in vitro*.

Figure 14 shows the growth proliferation index and apoptotic index after removal of the primary tumor and

treatment with saline or a fumagillin analogue with anti-angiogenic activity

Figure 15 shows the inhibition of growth of a T241 primary tumor in mice by treatment with human angiostatin *in vivo* with a single injection of 40 mg/kg/day.

Figure 16 shows the inhibition of growth of a LLC-LM primary tumor in mice by treatment with human angiostatin *in vivo* at two doses of 40 mg/kg per dose (80 mg/kg/day).

Figure 17 shows the effect of the removal of a Lewis lung carcinoma primary tumor on the growth of its lung metastases.

Figure 18 shows the growth proliferation and apoptotic index after tumor resection

Figure 19 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to mice having implated T241 fibrosarcoma cells on total tumor volume as a function of time.

Figure 20 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to mice having implated Lewis lung carcinoma (LM) cells on total tumor volume as a function of time.

Figure 21 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to mice having implated reticulum cell sarcoma cells on total tumor volume as a function of time.

Figure 22 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to immunodeficient SCID mice having implated human prostate carcinoma PC-3 cells on total tumor volume as a function of time over a 24 day period.

Figure 23 shows the effect of administration of angiostatin protein to immunodeficient SCID mice having implated human breast carcinoma MDA-MB cells on total tumor volume as a function of time over a 24 day period.

Figure 24 is a schematic representation of cloning of the mouse DNA sequence coding for mouse angiostatin protein derived from mouse plasminogen cDNA. The mouse angiostatin encompasses mouse plasminogen kringle regions 1-

4. PCR means polymerase chain reaction; P1 is the 5'-end oligonucleotide primre for PCR; P2 is the 3'-end oligonucleotide primre for PCR; SS designates the signal sequence; ATG is the translation initiation codon; TAA is the translation stop codon; HA represents the hemagglutinin epitope tag (YPYDVPDYASL); K1, K2, K3 and K4 represent mouse plasminogen kringle regions 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. CMV is the cytomegalovirus promoter; T7 is the bacteria phage promoter; PA represents pre-activation peptides; and SP6 is the Sp 6 promoter.

Figure 25 depicts the number of cells as a function of days for non-transfected cells (mock); cells transfected with the vector alone, without the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin (Vector 5), and two angiostatin expressing clones (AST 31 and AST 37). Panel (a) represents the results of transfection of T241 cells. Panel (b) represents the results of LL2 cells.

Figure 26 shows the results of culture medium derived from E. coli cells containing the angiostatin clone on cell number. Non-transfected cells (mock); cells transfected with the vector alone, without the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin (Vector 5), and three angiostatin expressing clones (AST 25, AST 31 and AST 37). Panel (a) represents the results of incubation of culture medium from control (mock) and all angiostatin clones (expressing and non-expressing) on cell number. Panel (b) represents the results of incubation of culture medium from control (mock), vector alone (vector 6) and angiostatin clones expressing mouse angiostatin on cell number. Panel (c) represents the results of incubation of purified culture medium from control (mock) and angiostatin clones expressing mouse angiostatin on cell number, wherein the culture medium was purified over a lysine-sepharose colume to yield lysine binding components.

Figure 27 shows the effect on total tumor volume as a function of time of implanting T241 fibrosarcoma cells in

mice, where the fibrosarcoma cells have been transfected with a vector containing a DNA sequence coding for angiostatin protein, and where the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin protein. "Non-transfected" represents unaltered  
5 T241 fibrosarcoma cells implanted in mice. "Vector 6" represents T241 fibrosarcoma cells transfected with the vector only, which does not contain the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin protein, implanted in mice. "Clone 25, Clone 31 and Clone 37" represent three angiostatin-producing clones of  
10 T241 fibrosarcoma cells transfected with a vector containing the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin protein implanted in mice.

#### Detailed Description

15 The present invention includes compositions and methods for the detection and treatment of diseases and processes that are mediated by or associated with angiogenesis. The composition is angiostatin, which can be isolated from body fluids including, but not limited to, serum, urine and  
20 ascites, or synthesized by chemical or biological methods (e.g. cell culture, recombinant gene expression, peptide synthesis, and *in vitro* enzymatic catalysis of plasminogen or plasmin to yield active angiostatin). Recombinant techniques include gene amplification from DNA sources using the polymerase chain  
25 reaction (PCR), and gene amplification from RNA sources using reverse transcriptase/PCR. Angiostatin inhibits the growth of blood vessels into tissues such as unvascularized or vascularized tumors.

The present invention also encompasses a composition  
30 comprising, a vector containing a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in a cell, a composition comprising a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin or fragments or analogs thereof,  
35 and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin

4. PCR means polymerase chain reaction; P1 is the 5'-end oligonucleotide primre for PCR; P2 is the 3'-end oligonucleotide primre for PCR; SS designates the signal sequence; ATG is the translation initiation codon; TAA is the translation stop codon; HA represents the hemagglutinin epitope tag (YPYDVPDYASL); K1, K2, K3 and K4 represent mouse plasminogen kringle regions 1, 2, 3 and 4 respectively. CMV is the cytomegalovirus promoter; T7 is the bacteria phage promoter; PA represents pre-activation peptides; and SP6 is the Sp 6 promoter.

Figure 25 depicts the number of cells as a function of days for non-transfected cells (mock); cells transfected with the vector alone, without the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin (Vector 5), and two angiostatin expressing clones (AST 31 and AST 37). Panel (a) represents the results of transfection of T241 cells. Panel (b) represents the results of LL2 cells.

Figure 26 shows the results of culture medium derived from E. coli cells containing the angiostatin clone on cell number. Non-transfected cells (mock); cells transfected with the vector alone, without the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin (Vector 5), and three angiostatin expressing clones (AST 25, AST 31 and AST 37). Panel (a) represents the results of incubation of culture medium from control (mock) and all angiostatin clones (expressing and non-expressing) on cell number. Panel (b) represents the results of incubation of culture medium from control (mock), vector alone (vector 6) and angiostatin clones expressing mouse angiostatin on cell number. Panel (c) represents the results of incubation of purified culture medium from control (mock) and angiostatin clones expressing mouse angiostatin on cell number, wherein the culture medium was purified over a lysine-sepharose colume to yield lysine binding components.

Figure 27 shows the effect on total tumor volume as a function of time of implanting T241 fibrosarcoma cells in

mice, where the fibrosarcoma cells have been transfected with a vector containing a DNA sequence coding for angiostatin protein, and where the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin protein. "Non-transfected" represents unaltered  
5 T241 fibrosarcoma cells implanted in mice. "Vector 6" represents T241 fibrosarcoma cells transfected with the vector only, which does not contain the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin protein, implanted in mice. "Clone 25, Clone 31 and Clone 37" represent three angiostatin-producing clones of  
10 T241 fibrosarcoma cells transfected with a vector containing the DNA sequence coding for angiostatin protein implanted in mice.

#### Detailed Description

15 The present invention includes compositions and methods for the detection and treatment of diseases and processes that are mediated by or associated with angiogenesis. The composition is angiostatin, which can be isolated from body fluids including, but not limited to, serum, urine and  
20 ascites, or synthesized by chemical or biological methods (e.g. cell culture, recombinant gene expression, peptide synthesis, and *in vitro* enzymatic catalysis of plasminogen or plasmin to yield active angiostatin). Recombinant techniques include gene amplification from DNA sources using the polymerase chain  
25 reaction (PCR), and gene amplification from RNA sources using reverse transcriptase/PCR. Angiostatin inhibits the growth of blood vessels into tissues such as unvascularized or vascularized tumors.

The present invention also encompasses a composition  
30 comprising, a vector containing a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in a cell, a composition comprising a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin or fragments or analogs thereof,  
35 and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin



when present in the cell, and a method comprising, implanting into a human or non-human animal a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, and wherein the vector is capable of expressing  
5 angiostatin when present in the cell.

Still further, the present invention encompasses angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, angiostatin receptor agonists or angiostatin receptor antagonists that are combined with pharmaceutically acceptable  
10 excipients, and optionally sustained-release compounds or compositions, such as biodegradable polymers, to form therapeutic compositions. In particular, the invention includes a composition comprising an antibody that specifically binds to angiostatin, wherein the antibody does not bind to  
15 plasminogen.

More particularly, the present invention includes a protein designated angiostatin that has a molecular weight of approximately 38 to 45 kilodaltons (kD) that is capable of overcoming the angiogenic activity of endogenous growth  
20 factors such as bFGF, *in vitro*. Angiostatin is a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment  
25 beginning at amino acid number 98 of an intact murine plasminogen molecule. The term "substantially similar," when used in reference to angiostatin amino acid sequences, means an amino acid sequence having anti-angiogenic activity and having a molecular weight of approximately 38 kD to 45 kD,  
30 which also has a high degree of sequence homology to the peptide fragment of mouse plasminogen beginning approximately at amino acid number 98 in mouse plasminogen and weighing 38 kD to 45 kD. A high degree of homology means at least approximately 60% amino acid homology,  
35 desirably at least approximately 70% amino acid homology,

and more desirably at least approximately 80% amino acid homology. The term "endothelial inhibiting activity" as used herein means the capability of a molecule to inhibit angiogenesis in general and, for example, to inhibit the growth of bovine capillary endothelial cells in culture in the presence of fibroblast growth factor.

The amino acid sequence of the complete murine plasminogen molecule is shown in Figure 1 and in SEQ ID NO:1. The sequence for angiostatin begins approximately at amino acid 98. Active human angiostatin may start at either amino acid 97 or 99 of the intact human plasminogen molecule. The amino acid sequence of the first 339 amino acids of angiostatin from mouse is shown in Figure 2, (SEQ ID NO:2), and is compared with the sequences of corresponding plasminogen peptide fragments from human (SEQ ID NO:3, Rhesus monkey (SEQ ID NO:4), porcine (SEQ ID NO:5) and bovine (SEQ ID NO:6) plasminogen. Given that these sequences are identical in well over 50% of their amino acids, it is to be understood that the amino acid sequence of the angiostatin is substantially similar among species. The total number of amino acids in angiostatin is not known precisely but is defined by the molecular weight of the active molecule. The amino acid sequence of the angiostatin of the present invention may vary depending upon from which species the plasminogen molecule is derived. Thus, although the angiostatin of the present invention that is derived from human plasminogen has a slightly different sequence than angiostatin derived from mouse, it has anti-angiogenic activity as shown in a mouse tumor model.

Angiostatin has been shown to be capable of inhibiting the growth of endothelial cells *in vitro*. Angiostatin does not inhibit the growth of cell lines derived from other cell types. Specifically, angiostatin has no effect on Lewis lung carcinoma cell lines, mink lung epithelium, 3T3 fibroblasts, bovine aortic smooth muscle cells, bovine retinal pigment epithelium, MDCK

when present in the cell, and a method comprising, implanting into a human or non-human animal a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in the cell.

Still further, the present invention encompasses angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, angiostatin receptor agonists or angiostatin receptor antagonists that are combined with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, and optionally sustained-release compounds or compositions, such as biodegradable polymers, to form therapeutic compositions. In particular, the invention includes a composition comprising an antibody that specifically binds to angiostatin, wherein the antibody does not bind to plasminogen.

More particularly, the present invention includes a protein designated angiostatin that has a molecular weight of approximately 38 to 45 kilodaltons (kD) that is capable of overcoming the angiogenic activity of endogenous growth factors such as bFGF, *in vitro*. Angiostatin is a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of an intact murine plasminogen molecule. The term "substantially similar," when used in reference to angiostatin amino acid sequences, means an amino acid sequence having anti-angiogenic activity and having a molecular weight of approximately 38 kD to 45 kD, which also has a high degree of sequence homology to the peptide fragment of mouse plasminogen beginning approximately at amino acid number 98 in mouse plasminogen and weighing 38 kD to 45 kD. A high degree of homology means at least approximately 60% amino acid homology, desirably at least approximately 70% amino acid homology,

and more desirably at least approximately 80% amino acid homology. The term "endothelial inhibiting activity" as used herein means the capability of a molecule to inhibit angiogenesis in general and, for example, to inhibit the growth of bovine capillary endothelial cells in culture in the presence of fibroblast growth factor.

The amino acid sequence of the complete murine plasminogen molecule is shown in Figure 1 and in SEQ ID NO:1. The sequence for angiostatin begins approximately at amino acid 98. Active human angiostatin may start at either amino acid 97 or 99 of the intact human plasminogen molecule. The amino acid sequence of the first 339 amino acids of angiostatin from mouse is shown in Figure 2, (SEQ ID NO:2), and is compared with the sequences of corresponding plasminogen peptide fragments from human (SEQ ID NO:3, Rhesus monkey (SEQ ID NO:4), porcine (SEQ ID NO:5) and bovine (SEQ ID NO:6) plasminogen. Given that these sequences are identical in well over 50% of their amino acids, it is to be understood that the amino acid sequence of the angiostatin is substantially similar among species. The total number of amino acids in angiostatin is not known precisely but is defined by the molecular weight of the active molecule. The amino acid sequence of the angiostatin of the present invention may vary depending upon from which species the plasminogen molecule is derived. Thus, although the angiostatin of the present invention that is derived from human plasminogen has a slightly different sequence than angiostatin derived from mouse, it has anti-angiogenic activity as shown in a mouse tumor model.

Angiostatin has been shown to be capable of inhibiting the growth of endothelial cells *in vitro*. Angiostatin does not inhibit the growth of cell lines derived from other cell types. Specifically, angiostatin has no effect on Lewis lung carcinoma cell lines, mink lung epithelium, 3T3 fibroblasts, bovine aortic smooth muscle cells, bovine retinal pigment epithelium, MDCK

cells (canine renal epithelium), WI38 cells (human fetal lung fibroblasts) EFN cells (murine fetal fibroblasts) and LM cells (murine connective tissue). Endogenous angiostatin in a tumor bearing mouse is effective at inhibiting metastases at a systemic concentration of approximately 10 mg angiostatin/kg body weight.

Angiostatin has a specific three dimensional conformation that is defined by the kringle region of the plasminogen molecule. (Robbins, K.C., "The plasminogen-plasmin enzyme system" Hemostasis and Thrombosis, Basic Principles and Practice, 2nd Edition, ed. by Colman, R.W. et al. J.B. Lippincott Company, pp. 340-357, 1987) There are five such kringle regions, which are conformationally related motifs and have substantial sequence homology, in the NH<sub>2</sub> terminal portion of the plasminogen molecule. The three dimensional conformation of angiostatin is believed to encompass plasminogen kringle regions 1 through 3 and a part of kringle region 4. Each kringle region of the plasminogen molecule contains approximately 80 amino acids and contains 3 disulfide bonds. This cysteine motif is known to exist in other biologically active proteins. These proteins include, but are not limited to, prothrombin, hepatocyte growth factor, scatter factor and macrophage stimulating protein. (Yoshimura, T, et al., "Cloning, sequencing, and expression of human macrophage stimulating protein (MSP, MST1) confirms MSP as a member of the family of kringle proteins and locates the MSP gene on Chromosome 3" *J. Biol. Chem.*, Vol. 268, No. 21, pp. 15461-15468, 1993). It is contemplated that any isolated protein or peptide having a three dimensional kringle-like conformation or cysteine motif that has anti-angiogenic activity *in vivo*, is part of the present invention.

The present invention also includes the detection of the angiostatin in body fluids and tissues for the purpose of diagnosis or prognosis of diseases such as cancer. The present invention also includes the detection of angiostatin binding sites

and receptors in cells and tissues. The present invention also includes methods of treating or preventing angiogenic diseases and processes including, but not limited to, arthritis and tumors by stimulating the production of angiostatin, and/or by administering substantially purified angiostatin, or angiostatin agonists or antagonists, and/or angiostatin antisera or antisera directed against angiostatin antisera to a patient. Additional treatment methods include administration of angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin analogs, angiostatin antisera, or angiostatin receptor agonists and antagonists linked to cytotoxic agents. It is to be understood that the angiostatin can be animal or human in origin. Angiostatin can also be produced synthetically by chemical reaction or by recombinant techniques in conjunction with expression systems. Angiostatin can also be produced by enzymatically cleaving isolated plasminogen or plasmin to generate peptides having anti-angiogenic activity. Angiostatin may also be produced by compounds that mimic the action of endogenous enzymes that cleave plasminogen to angiostatin. Angiostatin production may also be modulated by compounds that affect the activity of plasminogen cleaving enzymes.

Passive antibody therapy using antibodies that specifically bind angiostatin can be employed to modulate angiogenic-dependent processes such as reproduction, development, and wound healing and tissue repair. In addition, antisera directed to the Fab regions of angiostatin antibodies can be administered to block the ability of endogenous angiostatin antisera to bind angiostatin.

The present invention also encompasses gene therapy whereby the gene encoding angiostatin is regulated in a patient. Various methods of transferring or delivering DNA to cells for expression of the gene product protein, otherwise referred to as gene therapy, are disclosed in *Gene Transfer into Mammalian Somatic Cells in vivo*, N. Yang, Crit. Rev. Biotechn. 12(4): 335-356 (1992), which is hereby incorporated

cells (canine renal epithelium), WI38 cells (human fetal lung fibroblasts) EFN cells (murine fetal fibroblasts) and LM cells (murine connective tissue). Endogenous angiostatin in a tumor bearing mouse is effective at inhibiting metastases at a systemic concentration of approximately 10 mg angiostatin/kg body weight.

Angiostatin has a specific three dimensional conformation that is defined by the kringle region of the plasminogen molecule. (Robbins, K.C., "The plasminogen-plasmin enzyme system" Hemostasis and Thrombosis, Basic Principles and Practice, 2nd Edition, ed. by Colman, R.W. et al. J.B. Lippincott Company, pp. 340-357, 1987) There are five such kringle regions, which are conformationally related motifs and have substantial sequence homology, in the NH<sub>2</sub> terminal portion of the plasminogen molecule. The three dimensional conformation of angiostatin is believed to encompass plasminogen kringle regions 1 through 3 and a part of kringle region 4. Each kringle region of the plasminogen molecule contains approximately 80 amino acids and contains 3 disulfide bonds. This cysteine motif is known to exist in other biologically active proteins. These proteins include, but are not limited to, prothrombin, hepatocyte growth factor, scatter factor and macrophage stimulating protein. (Yoshimura, T, et al., "Cloning, sequencing, and expression of human macrophage stimulating protein (MSP, MST1) confirms MSP as a member of the family of kringle proteins and locates the MSP gene on Chromosome 3" *J. Biol. Chem.*, Vol. 268, No. 21, pp. 15461-15468, 1993). It is contemplated that any isolated protein or peptide having a three dimensional kringle-like conformation or cysteine motif that has anti-angiogenic activity *in vivo*, is part of the present invention.

The present invention also includes the detection of the angiostatin in body fluids and tissues for the purpose of diagnosis or prognosis of diseases such as cancer. The present invention also includes the detection of angiostatin binding sites

and receptors in cells and tissues. The present invention also includes methods of treating or preventing angiogenic diseases and processes including, but not limited to, arthritis and tumors by stimulating the production of angiostatin, and/or by administering substantially purified angiostatin, or angiostatin agonists or antagonists, and/or angiostatin antisera or antisera directed against angiostatin antisera to a patient. Additional treatment methods include administration of angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin analogs, angiostatin antisera, or angiostatin receptor agonists and antagonists linked to cytotoxic agents. It is to be understood that the angiostatin can be animal or human in origin. Angiostatin can also be produced synthetically by chemical reaction or by recombinant techniques in conjunction with expression systems. Angiostatin can also be produced by enzymatically cleaving isolated plasminogen or plasmin to generate peptides having anti-angiogenic activity. Angiostatin may also be produced by compounds that mimic the action of endogenous enzymes that cleave plasminogen to angiostatin. Angiostatin production may also be modulated by compounds that affect the activity of plasminogen cleaving enzymes.

Passive antibody therapy using antibodies that specifically bind angiostatin can be employed to modulate angiogenic-dependent processes such as reproduction, development, and wound healing and tissue repair. In addition, antisera directed to the Fab regions of angiostatin antibodies can be administered to block the ability of endogenous angiostatin antisera to bind angiostatin.

The present invention also encompasses gene therapy whereby the gene encoding angiostatin is regulated in a patient. Various methods of transferring or delivering DNA to cells for expression of the gene product protein, otherwise referred to as gene therapy, are disclosed in *Gene Transfer into Mammalian Somatic Cells in vivo*, N. Yang, Crit. Rev. Biotechn. 12(4): 335-356 (1992), which is hereby incorporated



by reference. Gene therapy encompasses incorporation of DNA sequences into somatic cells or germ line cells for use in either *ex vivo* or *in vivo* therapy. Gene therapy functions to replace genes, augment normal or abnormal gene function, and to combat infectious diseases and other pathologies.

Strategies for treating these medical problems with gene therapy include therapeutic strategies such as identifying the defective gene and then adding a functional gene to either replace the function of the defective gene or to augment a slightly functional gene; or prophylactic strategies, such as adding a gene for the product protein that will treat the condition or that will make the tissue or organ more susceptible to a treatment regimen. As an example of a prophylactic strategy, a gene such as angiostatin may be placed in a patient and thus prevent occurrence of angiogenesis; or a gene that makes tumor cells more susceptible to radiation could be inserted and then radiation of the tumor would cause increased killing of the tumor cells.

Many protocols for transfer of angiostatin DNA or angiostatin regulatory sequences are envisioned in this invention. Transfection of promoter sequences, other than one normally found specifically associated with angiostatin, or other sequences which would increase production of angiostatin protein are also envisioned as methods of gene therapy. An example of this technology is found in Transkaryotic Therapies, Inc., of Cambridge, Massachusetts, using homologous recombination to insert a "genetic switch" that turns on an erythropoietin gene in cells. See Genetic Engineering News, April 15, 1994. Such "genetic switches" could be used to activate angiostatin (or the angiostatin receptor) in cells not normally expressing angiostatin (or the angiostatin receptor).

Gene transfer methods for gene therapy fall into three broad categories-physical (e.g., electroporation, direct gene transfer and particle bombardment), chemical (lipid-based

carriers, or other non-viral vectors) and biological (virus-derived vector and receptor uptake). For example, non-viral vectors may be used which include liposomes coated with DNA. Such liposome/DNA complexes may be directly  
5 injected intravenously into the patient. It is believed that the liposome/DNA complexes are concentrated in the liver where they deliver the DNA to macrophages and Kupffer cells. These cells are long lived and thus provide long term expression of the delivered DNA. Additionally, vectors or the  
10 "naked" DNA of the gene may be directly injected into the desired organ, tissue or tumor for targeted delivery of the therapeutic DNA.

Gene therapy methodologies can also be described by delivery site. Fundamental ways to deliver genes include *ex vivo* gene transfer, *in vivo* gene transfer, and *in vitro* gene transfer. In *ex vivo* gene transfer, cells are taken from the  
15 patient and grown in cell culture. The DNA is transfected into the cells, the transfected cells are expanded in number and then reimplanted in the patient. In *in vitro* gene transfer, the transformed cells are cells growing in culture, such as tissue culture cells, and not particular cells from a particular patient. These "laboratory cells" are transfected, the transfected cells  
20 are selected and expanded for either implantation into a patient or for other uses.

*In vivo* gene transfer involves introducing the DNA into the cells of the patient when the cells are within the patient. Methods include using virally mediated gene transfer using a noninfectious virus to deliver the gene in the patient or  
25 injecting naked DNA into a site in the patient and the DNA is taken up by a percentage of cells in which the gene product protein is expressed. Additionally, the other methods described herein, such as use of a "gene gun," may be used for  
30 *in vitro* insertion of angiostatin DNA or angiostatin regulatory sequences.

by reference. Gene therapy encompasses incorporation of DNA sequences into somatic cells or germ line cells for use in either *ex vivo* or *in vivo* therapy. Gene therapy functions to replace genes, augment normal or abnormal gene function, and to combat infectious diseases and other pathologies.

Strategies for treating these medical problems with gene therapy include therapeutic strategies such as identifying the defective gene and then adding a functional gene to either replace the function of the defective gene or to augment a slightly functional gene; or prophylactic strategies, such as adding a gene for the product protein that will treat the condition or that will make the tissue or organ more susceptible to a treatment regimen. As an example of a prophylactic strategy, a gene such as angiostatin may be placed in a patient and thus prevent occurrence of angiogenesis; or a gene that makes tumor cells more susceptible to radiation could be inserted and then radiation of the tumor would cause increased killing of the tumor cells.

Many protocols for transfer of angiostatin DNA or angiostatin regulatory sequences are envisioned in this invention. Transfection of promoter sequences, other than one normally found specifically associated with angiostatin, or other sequences which would increase production of angiostatin protein are also envisioned as methods of gene therapy. An example of this technology is found in Transkaryotic Therapies, Inc., of Cambridge, Massachusetts, using homologous recombination to insert a "genetic switch" that turns on an erythropoietin gene in cells. See Genetic Engineering News, April 15, 1994. Such "genetic switches" could be used to activate angiostatin (or the angiostatin receptor) in cells not normally expressing angiostatin (or the angiostatin receptor).

Gene transfer methods for gene therapy fall into three broad categories-physical (e.g., electroporation, direct gene transfer and particle bombardment), chemical (lipid-based

carriers, or other non-viral vectors) and biological (virus-derived vector and receptor uptake). For example, non-viral vectors may be used which include liposomes coated with DNA. Such liposome/DNA complexes may be directly  
5 injected intravenously into the patient. It is believed that the liposome/DNA complexes are concentrated in the liver where they deliver the DNA to macrophages and Kupffer cells. These cells are long lived and thus provide long term expression of the delivered DNA. Additionally, vectors or the  
10 "naked" DNA of the gene may be directly injected into the desired organ, tissue or tumor for targeted delivery of the therapeutic DNA.

Gene therapy methodologies can also be described by delivery site. Fundamental ways to deliver genes include *ex vivo* gene transfer, *in vivo* gene transfer, and *in vitro* gene transfer. In *ex vivo* gene transfer, cells are taken from the  
15 patient and grown in cell culture. The DNA is transfected into the cells, the transfected cells are expanded in number and then reimplanted in the patient. In *in vitro* gene transfer, the transformed cells are cells growing in culture, such as tissue culture cells, and not particular cells from a particular patient. These "laboratory cells" are transfected, the transfected cells are selected and expanded for either implantation into a patient  
20 or for other uses.

*In vivo* gene transfer involves introducing the DNA into the cells of the patient when the cells are within the patient. Methods include using virally mediated gene transfer using a noninfectious virus to deliver the gene in the patient or  
25 injecting naked DNA into a site in the patient and the DNA is taken up by a percentage of cells in which the gene product protein is expressed. Additionally, the other methods described herein, such as use of a "gene gun," may be used for  
30 *in vitro* insertion of angiostatin DNA or angiostatin regulatory sequences.

Chemical methods of gene therapy may involve a lipid based compound, not necessarily a liposome, to ferry the DNA across the cell membrane. Lipofectins or cytofectins, lipid-based positive ions that bind to negatively charged DNA, make a complex that can cross the cell membrane and provide the DNA into the interior of the cell. Another chemical method uses receptor-based endocytosis, which involves binding a specific ligand to a cell surface receptor and enveloping and transporting it across the cell membrane. The ligand binds to the DNA and the whole complex is transported into the cell. The ligand gene complex is injected into the blood stream and then target cells that have the receptor will specifically bind the ligand and transport the ligand-DNA complex into the cell.

Many gene therapy methodologies employ viral vectors to insert genes into cells. For example, altered retrovirus vectors have been used in *ex vivo* methods to introduce genes into peripheral and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, hepatocytes, epidermal cells, myocytes, or other somatic cells. These altered cells are then introduced into the patient to provide the gene product from the inserted DNA.

Viral vectors have also been used to insert genes into cells using *in vivo* protocols. To direct tissue-specific expression of foreign genes, cis-acting regulatory elements or promoters that are known to be tissue specific can be used. Alternatively, this can be achieved using *in situ* delivery of DNA or viral vectors to specific anatomical sites *in vivo*. For example, gene transfer to blood vessels *in vivo* was achieved by implanting *in vitro* transduced endothelial cells in chosen sites on arterial walls. The virus infected surrounding cells which also expressed the gene product. A viral vector can be delivered directly to the *in vivo* site, by a catheter for example, thus allowing only certain areas to be infected by the virus, and providing long-term, site specific gene expression. *In vivo* gene transfer using retrovirus vectors has also been demonstrated in mammary tissue and hepatic tissue by

injection of the altered virus into blood vessels leading to the organs.

5       Viral vectors that have been used for gene therapy protocols include but are not limited to, retroviruses, other RNA viruses such as poliovirus or Sindbis virus, adenovirus, adeno-associated virus, herpes viruses, SV 40, vaccinia and other DNA viruses. Replication-defective murine retroviral vectors are the most widely utilized gene transfer vectors. Murine leukemia retroviruses are composed of a single strand  
10       RNA complexed with a nuclear core protein and polymerase (pol) enzymes, encased by a protein core (gag) and surrounded by a glycoprotein envelope (env) that determines host range. The genomic structure of retroviruses include the gag, pol, and env genes enclosed at by the 5' and 3' long terminal repeats (LTR). Retroviral vector systems exploit the fact that  
15       a minimal vector containing the 5' and 3' LTRs and the packaging signal are sufficient to allow vector packaging, infection and integration into target cells providing that the viral structural proteins are supplied *in trans* in the packaging cell line. Fundamental advantages of retroviral vectors for  
20       gene transfer include efficient infection and gene expression in most cell types, precise single copy vector integration into target cell chromosomal DNA, and ease of manipulation of the retroviral genome.

25       The adenovirus is composed of linear, double stranded DNA complexed with core proteins and surrounded with capsid proteins. Advances in molecular virology have led to the ability to exploit the biology of these organisms to create vectors capable of transducing novel genetic sequences into  
30       target cells *in vivo*. Adenoviral-based vectors will express gene product peptides at high levels. Adenoviral vectors have high efficiencies of infectivity, even with low titers of virus. Additionally, the virus is fully infective as a cell free virion so injection of producer cell lines are not necessary. Another

Chemical methods of gene therapy may involve a lipid based compound, not necessarily a liposome, to ferry the DNA across the cell membrane. Lipofectins or cytofectins, lipid-based positive ions that bind to negatively charged DNA, make a complex that can cross the cell membrane and provide the DNA into the interior of the cell. Another chemical method uses receptor-based endocytosis, which involves binding a specific ligand to a cell surface receptor and enveloping and transporting it across the cell membrane. The ligand binds to the DNA and the whole complex is transported into the cell. The ligand gene complex is injected into the blood stream and then target cells that have the receptor will specifically bind the ligand and transport the ligand-DNA complex into the cell.

Many gene therapy methodologies employ viral vectors to insert genes into cells. For example, altered retrovirus vectors have been used in *ex vivo* methods to introduce genes into peripheral and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, hepatocytes, epidermal cells, myocytes, or other somatic cells. These altered cells are then introduced into the patient to provide the gene product from the inserted DNA.

Viral vectors have also been used to insert genes into cells using *in vivo* protocols. To direct tissue-specific expression of foreign genes, cis-acting regulatory elements or promoters that are known to be tissue specific can be used. Alternatively, this can be achieved using *in situ* delivery of DNA or viral vectors to specific anatomical sites *in vivo*. For example, gene transfer to blood vessels *in vivo* was achieved by implanting *in vitro* transduced endothelial cells in chosen sites on arterial walls. The virus infected surrounding cells which also expressed the gene product. A viral vector can be delivered directly to the *in vivo* site, by a catheter for example, thus allowing only certain areas to be infected by the virus, and providing long-term, site specific gene expression. *In vivo* gene transfer using retrovirus vectors has also been demonstrated in mammary tissue and hepatic tissue by

injection of the altered virus into blood vessels leading to the organs.

5       Viral vectors that have been used for gene therapy protocols include but are not limited to, retroviruses, other RNA viruses such as poliovirus or Sindbis virus, adenovirus, adeno-associated virus, herpes viruses, SV 40, vaccinia and other DNA viruses. Replication-defective murine retroviral vectors are the most widely utilized gene transfer vectors. Murine leukemia retroviruses are composed of a single strand 10 RNA complexed with a nuclear core protein and polymerase (pol) enzymes, encased by a protein core (gag) and surrounded by a glycoprotein envelope (env) that determines host range. The genomic structure of retroviruses include the gag, pol, and env genes enclosed at by the 5' and 3' long terminal repeats (LTR). Retroviral vector systems exploit the fact that 15 a minimal vector containing the 5' and 3' LTRs and the packaging signal are sufficient to allow vector packaging, infection and integration into target cells providing that the viral structural proteins are supplied *in trans* in the packaging cell line. Fundamental advantages of retroviral vectors for 20 gene transfer include efficient infection and gene expression in most cell types, precise single copy vector integration into target cell chromosomal DNA, and ease of manipulation of the retroviral genome.

25       The adenovirus is composed of linear, double stranded DNA complexed with core proteins and surrounded with capsid proteins. Advances in molecular virology have led to the ability to exploit the biology of these organisms to create vectors capable of transducing novel genetic sequences into target cells *in vivo*. Adenoviral-based vectors will express 30 gene product peptides at high levels. Adenoviral vectors have high efficiencies of infectivity, even with low titers of virus. Additionally, the virus is fully infective as a cell free virion so injection of producer cell lines are not necessary. Another



potential advantage to adenoviral vectors is the ability to achieve long term expression of heterologous genes *in vivo*.

5 Mechanical methods of DNA delivery include fusogenic lipid vesicles such as liposomes or other vesicles for membrane fusion, lipid particles of DNA incorporating cationic lipid such as lipofectin, polylysine-mediated transfer of DNA, direct injection of DNA, such as microinjection of DNA into germ or somatic cells, pneumatically delivered DNA-coated particles, such as the gold particles used in a "gene gun," and inorganic chemical approaches such as calcium phosphate transfection. 10 Another method, ligand-mediated gene therapy, involves complexing the DNA with specific ligands to form ligand-DNA conjugates, to direct the DNA to a specific cell or tissue.

15 It has been found that injecting plasmid DNA into muscle cells yields high percentage of the cells which are transfected and have sustained expression of marker genes. The DNA of the plasmid may or may not integrate into the genome of the cells. Non-integration of the transfected DNA would allow the transfection and expression of gene product proteins in terminally differentiated, non-proliferative tissues 20 for a prolonged period of time without fear of mutational insertions, deletions, or alterations in the cellular or mitochondrial genome. Long-term, but not necessarily permanent, transfer of therapeutic genes into specific cells may provide treatments for genetic diseases or for prophylactic use. 25 The DNA could be reinjected periodically to maintain the gene product level without mutations occurring in the genomes of the recipient cells. Non-integration of exogenous DNAs may allow for the presence of several different exogenous DNA constructs within one cell with all of the constructs expressing various gene products. 30

35 Particle-mediated gene transfer methods were first used in transforming plant tissue. With a particle bombardment device, or "gene gun," a motive force is generated to accelerate DNA-coated high density particles (such as gold or

tungsten) to a high velocity that allows penetration of the target organs, tissues or cells. Particle bombardment can be used in *in vitro* systems, or with *ex vivo* or *in vivo* techniques to introduce DNA into cells, tissues or organs.

5           Electroporation for gene transfer uses an electrical current to make cells or tissues susceptible to electroporation-mediated gene transfer. A brief electric impulse with a given field strength is used to increase the permeability of a membrane in such a way that DNA molecules can penetrate  
10           into the cells. This technique can be used in *in vitro* systems, or with *ex vivo* or *in vivo* techniques to introduce DNA into cells, tissues or organs.

          Carrier mediated gene transfer *in vivo* can be used to transfect foreign DNA into cells. The carrier-DNA complex  
15           can be conveniently introduced into body fluids or the bloodstream and then site specifically directed to the target organ or tissue in the body. Both liposomes and polycations, such as polylysine, lipofectins or cytofectins, can be used. Liposomes can be developed which are cell specific or organ  
20           specific and thus the foreign DNA carried by the liposome will be taken up by target cells. Injection of immunoliposomes that are targeted to a specific receptor on certain cells can be used as a convenient method of inserting the DNA into the cells bearing the receptor. Another carrier system that has been  
25           used is the asialoglycoprotein/polylysine conjugate system for carrying DNA to hepatocytes for *in vivo* gene transfer.

          The transfected DNA may also be complexed with other kinds of carriers so that the DNA is carried to the recipient cell and then resides in the cytoplasm or in the nucleoplasm.  
30           DNA can be coupled to carrier nuclear proteins in specifically engineered vesicle complexes and carried directly into the nucleus.

          Gene regulation of angiostatin may be accomplished by administering compounds that bind to the angiostatin gene, or  
35           control regions associated with the angiostatin gene, or its

potential advantage to adenoviral vectors is the ability to achieve long term expression of heterologous genes *in vivo*.

5 Mechanical methods of DNA delivery include fusogenic lipid vesicles such as liposomes or other vesicles for membrane fusion, lipid particles of DNA incorporating cationic lipid such as lipofectin, polylysine-mediated transfer of DNA, direct injection of DNA, such as microinjection of DNA into germ or somatic cells, pneumatically delivered DNA-coated particles, such as the gold particles used in a "gene gun," and inorganic chemical approaches such as calcium phosphate transfection. 10 Another method, ligand-mediated gene therapy, involves complexing the DNA with specific ligands to form ligand-DNA conjugates, to direct the DNA to a specific cell or tissue.

15 It has been found that injecting plasmid DNA into muscle cells yields high percentage of the cells which are transfected and have sustained expression of marker genes. The DNA of the plasmid may or may not integrate into the genome of the cells. Non-integration of the transfected DNA would allow the transfection and expression of gene product 20 proteins in terminally differentiated, non-proliferative tissues for a prolonged period of time without fear of mutational insertions, deletions, or alterations in the cellular or mitochondrial genome. Long-term, but not necessarily permanent, transfer of therapeutic genes into specific cells may provide treatments for genetic diseases or for prophylactic use. 25 The DNA could be reinjected periodically to maintain the gene product level without mutations occurring in the genomes of the recipient cells. Non-integration of exogenous DNAs may allow for the presence of several different exogenous DNA constructs within one cell with all of the constructs expressing 30 various gene products.

Particle-mediated gene transfer methods were first used in transforming plant tissue. With a particle bombardment device, or "gene gun," a motive force is generated to 35 accelerate DNA-coated high density particles (such as gold or

tungsten) to a high velocity that allows penetration of the target organs, tissues or cells. Particle bombardment can be used in *in vitro* systems, or with *ex vivo* or *in vivo* techniques to introduce DNA into cells, tissues or organs.

5        Electroporation for gene transfer uses an electrical current to make cells or tissues susceptible to electroporation-mediated gene transfer. A brief electric impulse with a given field strength is used to increase the permeability of a membrane in such a way that DNA molecules can penetrate  
10       into the cells. This technique can be used in *in vitro* systems, or with *ex vivo* or *in vivo* techniques to introduce DNA into cells, tissues or organs.

15       Carrier mediated gene transfer *in vivo* can be used to transfect foreign DNA into cells. The carrier-DNA complex can be conveniently introduced into body fluids or the bloodstream and then site specifically directed to the target organ or tissue in the body. Both liposomes and polycations, such as polylysine, lipofectins or cytofectins, can be used. Liposomes can be developed which are cell specific or organ  
20       specific and thus the foreign DNA carried by the liposome will be taken up by target cells. Injection of immunoliposomes that are targeted to a specific receptor on certain cells can be used as a convenient method of inserting the DNA into the cells bearing the receptor. Another carrier system that has been  
25       used is the asialoglycoprotein/polylysine conjugate system for carrying DNA to hepatocytes for *in vivo* gene transfer.

30       The transfected DNA may also be complexed with other kinds of carriers so that the DNA is carried to the recipient cell and then resides in the cytoplasm or in the nucleoplasm. DNA can be coupled to carrier nuclear proteins in specifically engineered vesicle complexes and carried directly into the nucleus.

35       Gene regulation of angiostatin may be accomplished by administering compounds that bind to the angiostatin gene, or control regions associated with the angiostatin gene, or its

5 corresponding RNA transcript to modify the rate of transcription or translation. Additionally, cells transfected with a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin may be administered to a patient to provide an *in vivo* source of angiostatin. For example, cells may be transfected with a vector containing a nucleic acid sequence encoding angiostatin.

10 The term "vector" as used herein means a carrier that can contain or associate with specific nucleic acid sequences, which functions to transport the specific nucleic acid sequences into a cell. Examples of vectors include plasmids and infective microorganisms such as viruses, or non-viral vectors such as ligand-DNA conjugates, liposomes, lipid-DNA complexes. It may be desirable that a recombinant DNA molecule comprising an angiostatin DNA sequence is operatively linked to an expression control sequence to form an expression vector capable of expressing angiostatin. The transfected cells may be cells derived from the patient's normal tissue, the patient's diseased tissue, or may be non-patient cells.

20 For example, tumor cells removed from a patient can be transfected with a vector capable of expressing the angiostatin protein of the present invention, and re-introduced into the patient. The transfected tumor cells produce angiostatin levels in the patient that inhibit the growth of the tumor. Patients may be human or non-human animals. Cells may also be transfected by non-vector, or physical or chemical methods known in the art such as electroporation, ionoporation, or via a "gene gun." Additionally, angiostatin DNA may be directly injected, without the aid of a carrier, into a patient. In particular, angiostatin DNA may be injected into skin, muscle or blood.

30 The gene therapy protocol for transfecting angiostatin into a patient may either be through integration of the angiostatin DNA into the genome of the cells, into minichromosomes or as a separate replicating or non-replicating DNA construct in the cytoplasm or nucleoplasm of

35

the cell. Angiostatin expression may continue for a long-period of time or may be reinjected periodically to maintain a desired level of the angiostatin protein in the cell, the tissue or organ or a determined blood level.

5           Angiostatin can be isolated on an HPLC C4 column (see Table 3). The angiostatin protein is eluted at 30 to 35% in an acetonitrile gradient. On a sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) gel under  
10           reducing conditions, the protein band with activity eluted as a single peak at approximately 38 kilodaltons.

          The inventors have shown that a growing primary tumor is associated with the release into the blood stream of specific inhibitor(s) of endothelial cell proliferation, including  
15           angiostatin which can suppress angiogenesis within a metastasis and thereby inhibit the growth of the metastasis itself. The source of the angiostatin associated with the primary tumor is not known. The compound may be produced by degradation of plasminogen by a specific protease, or angiostatin could be  
20           produced by expression of a specific gene coding for angiostatin.

          The angiogenic phenotype of a primary tumor depends on production of angiogenic peptides in excess of endothelial cell inhibitors which are elaborated by normal cells, but are  
25           believed to be down-regulated during transformation to neoplasia. While production of angiostatin may be down-regulated in an individual tumor cell relative to production by its parent cell type, the total amount of inhibitor elaborated by the whole tumor may be sufficient to enter the circulation and suppress endothelial growth at remote sites of micrometastases.  
30           Angiostatin remains in the circulation for a significantly longer time than the angiogenic peptide(s) released by a primary tumor. Thus, the angiogenic peptides appear to act locally, whereas angiostatin acts globally and circulates in the blood with a relatively long half-life. The half-life of the  
35           angiostatin is approximately 12 hours to 5 days.

corresponding RNA transcript to modify the rate of transcription or translation. Additionally, cells transfected with a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin may be administered to a patient to provide an *in vivo* source of angiostatin. For example, cells may be transfected with a vector containing a nucleic acid sequence encoding angiostatin.

The term "vector" as used herein means a carrier that can contain or associate with specific nucleic acid sequences, which functions to transport the specific nucleic acid sequences into a cell. Examples of vectors include plasmids and infective microorganisms such as viruses, or non-viral vectors such as ligand-DNA conjugates, liposomes, lipid-DNA complexes. It may be desirable that a recombinant DNA molecule comprising an angiostatin DNA sequence is operatively linked to an expression control sequence to form an expression vector capable of expressing angiostatin. The transfected cells may be cells derived from the patient's normal tissue, the patient's diseased tissue, or may be non-patient cells.

For example, tumor cells removed from a patient can be transfected with a vector capable of expressing the angiostatin protein of the present invention, and re-introduced into the patient. The transfected tumor cells produce angiostatin levels in the patient that inhibit the growth of the tumor. Patients may be human or non-human animals. Cells may also be transfected by non-vector, or physical or chemical methods known in the art such as electroporation, ionoporation, or via a "gene gun." Additionally, angiostatin DNA may be directly injected, without the aid of a carrier, into a patient. In particular, angiostatin DNA may be injected into skin, muscle or blood.

The gene therapy protocol for transfecting angiostatin into a patient may either be through integration of the angiostatin DNA into the genome of the cells, into minichromosomes or as a separate replicating or non-replicating DNA construct in the cytoplasm or nucleoplasm of

the cell. Angiostatin expression may continue for a long-period of time or may be reinjected periodically to maintain a desired level of the angiostatin protein in the cell, the tissue or organ or a determined blood level.

5           Angiostatin can be isolated on an HPLC C4 column (see Table 3). The angiostatin protein is eluted at 30 to 35% in an acetonitrile gradient. On a sodium dodecyl sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) gel under  
10           reducing conditions, the protein band with activity eluted as a single peak at approximately 38 kilodaltons.

          The inventors have shown that a growing primary tumor is associated with the release into the blood stream of specific inhibitor(s) of endothelial cell proliferation, including  
15           angiostatin which can suppress angiogenesis within a metastasis and thereby inhibit the growth of the metastasis itself. The source of the angiostatin associated with the primary tumor is not known. The compound may be produced by degradation of plasminogen by a specific protease, or angiostatin could be  
20           produced by expression of a specific gene coding for angiostatin.

          The angiogenic phenotype of a primary tumor depends on production of angiogenic peptides in excess of endothelial cell inhibitors which are elaborated by normal cells, but are  
25           believed to be down-regulated during transformation to neoplasia. While production of angiostatin may be down-regulated in an individual tumor cell relative to production by its parent cell type, the total amount of inhibitor elaborated by the whole tumor may be sufficient to enter the circulation and suppress endothelial growth at remote sites of micrometastases.  
30           Angiostatin remains in the circulation for a significantly longer time than the angiogenic peptide(s) released by a primary tumor. Thus, the angiogenic peptides appear to act locally, whereas angiostatin acts globally and circulates in the blood with a relatively long half-life. The half-life of the  
35           angiostatin is approximately 12 hours to 5 days.



Although not wanting to be bound by the following hypothesis, it is believed that when a tumor becomes angiogenic it releases one or more angiogenic peptides (e.g., aFGF, bFGF, VEGF, IL-8, GM-CSF, etc.), which act locally, target endothelium in the neighborhood of a primary tumor from an extravascular direction, and do not circulate (or circulate with a short half-life). These angiogenic peptides must be produced in an amount sufficient to overcome the action of endothelial cell inhibitor (inhibitors of angiogenesis) for a primary tumor to continue to expand its population. Once such a primary tumor is growing well, it continues to release endothelial cell inhibitors into the circulation. According to this hypothesis, these inhibitors act remotely at a distance from the primary tumor, target capillary endothelium of a metastasis from an intravascular direction, and continue to circulate. Thus, just at the time when a remote metastasis might begin to initiate angiogenesis, the capillary endothelium in its neighborhood could be inhibited by incoming angiostatin.

Once a primary tumor has reached sufficient size to cause angiostatin to be released continuously into the circulation, it is difficult for a second tumor implant (or a micrometastasis) to initiate or increase its own angiogenesis. If a second tumor implant (e.g., into the subcutaneous space, or into the cornea, or intravenously to the lung) occurs shortly after the primary tumor is implanted, the primary tumor will not be able to suppress the secondary tumor (because angiogenesis in the secondary tumor will already be well underway). If two tumors are implanted simultaneously (e.g., in opposite flanks), the inhibitors may have an equivalent inhibiting effect on each other.

The angiostatin of the present invention can be:

(i) Administered to tumor-bearing humans or animals as anti-angiogenic therapy;

(ii) Monitored in human or animal serum, urine, or tissues as prognostic markers; and

(iii) Used as the basis to analyze serum and urine of cancer patients for similar angiostatic molecules.

It is contemplated as part of the present invention that angiostatin can be isolated from a body fluid such as blood or urine of patients or the angiostatin can be produced by recombinant DNA methods or synthetic peptide chemical methods that are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Protein purification methods are well known in the art and a specific example of a method for purifying angiostatin, and assaying for inhibitor activity is provided in the examples below. Isolation of human endogenous angiostatin is accomplished using similar techniques.

One example of a method of producing angiostatin using recombinant DNA techniques entails the steps of (1) identifying and purifying angiostatin as discussed above, and as more fully described below, (2) determining the N-terminal amino acid sequence of the purified inhibitor, (3) synthetically generating 5' and 3' DNA oligonucleotide primers for the angiostatin sequence, (4) amplifying the angiostatin gene sequence using polymerase, (5) inserting the amplified sequence into an appropriate vector such as an expression vector, (6) inserting the gene containing vector into a microorganism or other expression system capable of expressing the inhibitor gene, and (7) isolating the recombinantly produced inhibitor. Appropriate vectors include viral, bacterial and eukaryotic (such as yeast) expression vectors. The above techniques are more fully described in laboratory manuals such as "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual" Second Edition by Sambrook et al., Cold Spring Harbor Press, 1989. The DNA sequence of human plasminogen has been published (Browne, M.J., et al., "Expression of recombinant human plasminogen and aglycoplasminogen in HeLa cells" Fibrinolysis Vol.5 (4). 257-260, 1991) and is incorporated herein by reference

Although not wanting to be bound by the following hypothesis, it is believed that when a tumor becomes angiogenic it releases one or more angiogenic peptides (e.g., aFGF, bFGF, VEGF, IL-8, GM-CSF, etc.), which act locally, target endothelium in the neighborhood of a primary tumor from an extravascular direction, and do not circulate (or circulate with a short half-life). These angiogenic peptides must be produced in an amount sufficient to overcome the action of endothelial cell inhibitor (inhibitors of angiogenesis) for a primary tumor to continue to expand its population. Once such a primary tumor is growing well, it continues to release endothelial cell inhibitors into the circulation. According to this hypothesis, these inhibitors act remotely at a distance from the primary tumor, target capillary endothelium of a metastasis from an intravascular direction, and continue to circulate. Thus, just at the time when a remote metastasis might begin to initiate angiogenesis, the capillary endothelium in its neighborhood could be inhibited by incoming angiostatin.

Once a primary tumor has reached sufficient size to cause angiostatin to be released continuously into the circulation, it is difficult for a second tumor implant (or a micrometastasis) to initiate or increase its own angiogenesis. If a second tumor implant (e.g., into the subcutaneous space, or into the cornea, or intravenously to the lung) occurs shortly after the primary tumor is implanted, the primary tumor will not be able to suppress the secondary tumor (because angiogenesis in the secondary tumor will already be well underway). If two tumors are implanted simultaneously (e.g., in opposite flanks), the inhibitors may have an equivalent inhibiting effect on each other.

The angiostatin of the present invention can be:

(i) Administered to tumor-bearing humans or animals as anti-angiogenic therapy;

(ii) Monitored in human or animal serum, urine, or tissues as prognostic markers; and

(iii) Used as the basis to analyze serum and urine of cancer patients for similar angiostatic molecules.

It is contemplated as part of the present invention that angiostatin can be isolated from a body fluid such as blood or urine of patients or the angiostatin can be produced by recombinant DNA methods or synthetic peptide chemical methods that are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art. Protein purification methods are well known in the art and a specific example of a method for purifying angiostatin, and assaying for inhibitor activity is provided in the examples below. Isolation of human endogenous angiostatin is accomplished using similar techniques.

One example of a method of producing angiostatin using recombinant DNA techniques entails the steps of (1) identifying and purifying angiostatin as discussed above, and as more fully described below, (2) determining the N-terminal amino acid sequence of the purified inhibitor, (3) synthetically generating 5' and 3' DNA oligonucleotide primers for the angiostatin sequence, (4) amplifying the angiostatin gene sequence using polymerase, (5) inserting the amplified sequence into an appropriate vector such as an expression vector, (6) inserting the gene containing vector into a microorganism or other expression system capable of expressing the inhibitor gene, and (7) isolating the recombinantly produced inhibitor. Appropriate vectors include viral, bacterial and eukaryotic (such as yeast) expression vectors. The above techniques are more fully described in laboratory manuals such as "Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual" Second Edition by Sambrook et al., Cold Spring Harbor Press, 1989. The DNA sequence of human plasminogen has been published (Browne, M.J., et al., "Expression of recombinant human plasminogen and aglycoplasminogen in HeLa cells" Fibrinolysis Vol.5 (4). 257-260, 1991) and is incorporated herein by reference

5 The gene for angiostatin may also be isolated from cells or tissue (such as tumor cells) that express high levels of angiostatin by (1) isolating messenger RNA from the tissue, (2) using reverse transcriptase to generate the corresponding DNA sequence and then (3) using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) with the appropriate primers to amplify the DNA sequence coding for the active angiostatin amino acid sequence.

10 Yet another method of producing angiostatin, or biologically active fragments thereof, is by peptide synthesis. Once a biologically active fragment of an angiostatin is found using the assay system described more fully below, it can be sequenced, for example by automated peptide sequencing methods. Alternatively, once the gene or DNA sequence  
15 which codes for angiostatin is isolated, for example by the methods described above, the DNA sequence can be determined using manual or automated sequencing methods well known in the art. The nucleic acid sequence in turn provides information regarding the amino acid sequence.  
20 Thus, if the biologically active fragment is generated by specific methods, such as tryptic digests, or if the fragment is N-terminal sequenced, the remaining amino acid sequence can be determined from the corresponding DNA sequence.

25 Once the amino acid sequence of the peptide is known, the fragment can be synthesized by techniques well known in the art, as exemplified by "Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis: A Practical Approach" E. Atherton and R.C. Sheppard, IRL Press, Oxford, England. Similarly, multiple fragments can be synthesized which are subsequently linked together to form  
30 larger fragments. These synthetic peptide fragments can also be made with amino acid substitutions at specific locations to test for agonistic and antagonistic activity *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Peptide fragments that possess high affinity binding to tissues can be used to isolate the angiostatin receptor on affinity  
35 columns. Isolation and purification of the angiostatin receptor

is a fundamental step towards elucidating the mechanism of action of angiostatin. Isolation of an angiostatin receptor and identification of angiostatin agonists and antagonists will facilitate development of drugs to modulate the activity of the angiostatin receptor, the final pathway to biological activity. Isolation of the receptor enables the construction of nucleotide probes to monitor the location and synthesis of the receptor, using *in situ* and solution hybridization technology. Further, the gene for the angiostatin receptor can be isolated, incorporated into an expression vector and transfected into cells, such as patient tumor cells to increase the ability of a cell type, tissue or tumor to bind angiostatin and inhibit local angiogenesis.

Angiostatin is effective in treating diseases or processes that are mediated by, or involve, angiogenesis. The present invention includes the method of treating an angiogenesis mediated disease with an effective amount of angiostatin, or a biologically active fragment thereof, or combinations of angiostatin fragments that collectively possess anti-angiogenic activity, or angiostatin agonists and antagonists. The angiogenesis mediated diseases include, but are not limited to, solid tumors; blood born tumors such as leukemias; tumor metastasis; benign tumors, for example hemangiomas, acoustic neuromas, neurofibromas, trachomas, and pyogenic granulomas; rheumatoid arthritis; psoriasis; ocular angiogenic diseases, for example, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, macular degeneration, corneal graft rejection, neovascular glaucoma, retrolental fibroplasia, rubeosis; Osler-Webber Syndrome; myocardial angiogenesis; plaque neovascularization; telangiectasia; hemophiliac joints; angiofibroma; and wound granulation. Angiostatin is useful in the treatment of disease of excessive or abnormal stimulation of endothelial cells. These diseases include, but are not limited to, intestinal adhesions, Crohn's disease, atherosclerosis, scleroderma, and hypertrophic scars, i.e., keloids. Angiostatin

5       The gene for angiostatin may also be isolated from cells or tissue (such as tumor cells) that express high levels of angiostatin by (1) isolating messenger RNA from the tissue, (2) using reverse transcriptase to generate the corresponding DNA sequence and then (3) using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) with the appropriate primers to amplify the DNA sequence coding for the active angiostatin amino acid sequence.

10       Yet another method of producing angiostatin, or biologically active fragments thereof, is by peptide synthesis. Once a biologically active fragment of an angiostatin is found using the assay system described more fully below, it can be sequenced, for example by automated peptide sequencing methods. Alternatively, once the gene or DNA sequence  
15       which codes for angiostatin is isolated, for example by the methods described above, the DNA sequence can be determined using manual or automated sequencing methods well known in the art. The nucleic acid sequence in turn provides information regarding the amino acid sequence.  
20       Thus, if the biologically active fragment is generated by specific methods, such as tryptic digests, or if the fragment is N-terminal sequenced, the remaining amino acid sequence can be determined from the corresponding DNA sequence.

25       Once the amino acid sequence of the peptide is known, the fragment can be synthesized by techniques well known in the art, as exemplified by "Solid Phase Peptide Synthesis: A Practical Approach" E. Atherton and R.C. Sheppard, IRL Press, Oxford, England. Similarly, multiple fragments can be synthesized which are subsequently linked together to form  
30       larger fragments. These synthetic peptide fragments can also be made with amino acid substitutions at specific locations to test for agonistic and antagonistic activity *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Peptide fragments that possess high affinity binding to tissues can be used to isolate the angiostatin receptor on affinity  
35       columns. Isolation and purification of the angiostatin receptor

is a fundamental step towards elucidating the mechanism of action of angiostatin. Isolation of an angiostatin receptor and identification of angiostatin agonists and antagonists will facilitate development of drugs to modulate the activity of the angiostatin receptor, the final pathway to biological activity. Isolation of the receptor enables the construction of nucleotide probes to monitor the location and synthesis of the receptor, using *in situ* and solution hybridization technology. Further, the gene for the angiostatin receptor can be isolated, incorporated into an expression vector and transfected into cells, such as patient tumor cells to increase the ability of a cell type, tissue or tumor to bind angiostatin and inhibit local angiogenesis.

Angiostatin is effective in treating diseases or processes that are mediated by, or involve, angiogenesis. The present invention includes the method of treating an angiogenesis mediated disease with an effective amount of angiostatin, or a biologically active fragment thereof, or combinations of angiostatin fragments that collectively possess anti-angiogenic activity, or angiostatin agonists and antagonists. The angiogenesis mediated diseases include, but are not limited to, solid tumors; blood born tumors such as leukemias; tumor metastasis; benign tumors, for example hemangiomas, acoustic neuromas, neurofibromas, trachomas, and pyogenic granulomas; rheumatoid arthritis; psoriasis; ocular angiogenic diseases, for example, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, macular degeneration, corneal graft rejection, neovascular glaucoma, retrolental fibroplasia, rubeosis; Osler-Webber Syndrome; myocardial angiogenesis; plaque neovascularization; telangiectasia; hemophiliac joints; angiofibroma; and wound granulation. Angiostatin is useful in the treatment of disease of excessive or abnormal stimulation of endothelial cells. These diseases include, but are not limited to, intestinal adhesions, Crohn's disease, atherosclerosis, scleroderma, and hypertrophic scars, i.e., keloids. Angiostatin



can be used as a birth control agent by preventing vascularization required for embryo implantation. Angiostatin is useful in the treatment of diseases that have angiogenesis as a pathologic consequence such as cat scratch disease (*Rochel*  
5 *minalia quintosa*) and ulcers (*Helicobacter pylori*).

The synthetic peptide fragments of angiostatin have a variety of uses. The peptide that binds to the angiostatin receptor with high specificity and avidity is radiolabeled and employed for visualization and quantitation of binding sites  
10 using autoradiographic and membrane binding techniques. This application provides important diagnostic and research tools. Knowledge of the binding properties of the angiostatin receptor facilitates investigation of the transduction mechanisms linked to the receptor.

15 In addition, labeling angiostatin peptides with short lived isotopes enables visualization of receptor binding sites *in vivo* using positron emission tomography or other modern radiographic techniques to locate tumors with angiostatin binding sites.

20 Systematic substitution of amino acids within these synthesized peptides yields high affinity peptide agonists and antagonists to the angiostatin receptor that enhance or diminish angiostatin binding to its receptor. Such agonists are used to suppress the growth of micrometastases, thereby limiting the  
25 spread of cancer. Antagonists to angiostatin are applied in situations of inadequate vascularization, to block the inhibitory effects of angiostatin and promote angiogenesis. For example, this treatment may have therapeutic effects to promote wound healing in diabetics.

30 Angiostatin peptides are employed to develop affinity columns for isolation of the angiostatin receptor from cultured tumor cells. Isolation and purification of the angiostatin receptor is followed by amino acid sequencing. Using this information the gene or genes coding for the angiostatin  
35 receptor can be identified and isolated. Next, cloned nucleic

acid sequences are developed for insertion into vectors capable of expressing the receptor. These techniques are well known to those skilled in the art. Transfection of the nucleic acid sequence(s) coding for angiostatin receptor into tumor cells, and expression of the receptor by the transfected tumor cells enhances the responsiveness of these cells to endogenous or exogenous angiostatin and thereby decreasing the rate of metastatic growth.

Cytotoxic agents such as ricin, are linked to angiostatin, and high affinity angiostatin peptide fragments, thereby providing a tool for destruction of cells that bind angiostatin. These cells may be found in many locations, including but not limited to, micrometastases and primary tumors. Peptides linked to cytotoxic agents are infused in a manner designed to maximize delivery to the desired location. For example, ricin-linked high affinity angiostatin fragments are delivered through a cannula into vessels supplying the target site or directly into the target. Such agents are also delivered in a controlled manner through osmotic pumps coupled to infusion cannulae. A combination of angiostatin antagonists may be co-applied with stimulators of angiogenesis to increase vascularization of tissue. This therapeutic regimen provides an effective means of destroying metastatic cancer.

Angiostatin may be used in combination with other compositions and procedures for the treatment of diseases. For example, a tumor may be treated conventionally with surgery, radiation or chemotherapy combined with angiostatin and then angiostatin may be subsequently administered to the patient to extend the dormancy of micrometastases and to stabilize and inhibit the growth of any residual primary tumor. Additionally, angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, angiostatin receptor agonists, angiostatin receptor antagonists, or combinations thereof, are combined with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, and optionally

can be used as a birth control agent by preventing vascularization required for embryo implantation. Angiostatin is useful in the treatment of diseases that have angiogenesis as a pathologic consequence such as cat scratch disease (*Rochel*  
5 *minalia quintosa*) and ulcers (*Helicobacter pylori*).

The synthetic peptide fragments of angiostatin have a variety of uses. The peptide that binds to the angiostatin receptor with high specificity and avidity is radiolabeled and employed for visualization and quantitation of binding sites  
10 using autoradiographic and membrane binding techniques. This application provides important diagnostic and research tools. Knowledge of the binding properties of the angiostatin receptor facilitates investigation of the transduction mechanisms linked to the receptor.

15 In addition, labeling angiostatin peptides with short lived isotopes enables visualization of receptor binding sites *in vivo* using positron emission tomography or other modern radiographic techniques to locate tumors with angiostatin binding sites.

20 Systematic substitution of amino acids within these synthesized peptides yields high affinity peptide agonists and antagonists to the angiostatin receptor that enhance or diminish angiostatin binding to its receptor. Such agonists are used to suppress the growth of micrometastases, thereby limiting the  
25 spread of cancer. Antagonists to angiostatin are applied in situations of inadequate vascularization, to block the inhibitory effects of angiostatin and promote angiogenesis. For example, this treatment may have therapeutic effects to promote wound healing in diabetics.

30 Angiostatin peptides are employed to develop affinity columns for isolation of the angiostatin receptor from cultured tumor cells. Isolation and purification of the angiostatin receptor is followed by amino acid sequencing. Using this  
35 information the gene or genes coding for the angiostatin receptor can be identified and isolated. Next, cloned nucleic

acid sequences are developed for insertion into vectors capable of expressing the receptor. These techniques are well known to those skilled in the art. Transfection of the nucleic acid sequence(s) coding for angiostatin receptor into tumor cells, and expression of the receptor by the transfected tumor cells enhances the responsiveness of these cells to endogenous or exogenous angiostatin and thereby decreasing the rate of metastatic growth.

Cytotoxic agents such as ricin, are linked to angiostatin, and high affinity angiostatin peptide fragments, thereby providing a tool for destruction of cells that bind angiostatin. These cells may be found in many locations, including but not limited to, micrometastases and primary tumors. Peptides linked to cytotoxic agents are infused in a manner designed to maximize delivery to the desired location. For example, ricin-linked high affinity angiostatin fragments are delivered through a cannula into vessels supplying the target site or directly into the target. Such agents are also delivered in a controlled manner through osmotic pumps coupled to infusion cannulae. A combination of angiostatin antagonists may be co-applied with stimulators of angiogenesis to increase vascularization of tissue. This therapeutic regimen provides an effective means of destroying metastatic cancer.

Angiostatin may be used in combination with other compositions and procedures for the treatment of diseases. For example, a tumor may be treated conventionally with surgery, radiation or chemotherapy combined with angiostatin and then angiostatin may be subsequently administered to the patient to extend the dormancy of micrometastases and to stabilize and inhibit the growth of any residual primary tumor. Additionally, angiostatin, angiostatin fragments, angiostatin antisera, angiostatin receptor agonists, angiostatin receptor antagonists, or combinations thereof, are combined with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, and optionally

sustained-release matrix, such as biodegradable polymers, to form therapeutic compositions.

5 A sustained-release matrix, as used herein, is a matrix made of materials, usually polymers, which are degradable by enzymatic or acid/base hydrolysis or by dissolution. Once inserted into the body, the matrix is acted upon by enzymes and body fluids. The sustained-release matrix desirably is chosen from biocompatible materials such as liposomes, polylactides (polylactic acid), polyglycolide (polymer of glycolic acid), polylactide co-glycolide (co-polymers of lactic acid and glycolic acid) polyanhydrides, poly(ortho)esters, polypeptides, hyaluronic acid, collagen, chondroitin sulfate, carboxylic acids, fatty acids, phospholipids, polysaccharides, nucleic acids, polyamino acids, amino acids such as phenylalanine, tyrosine, isoleucine, polynucleotides, polyvinyl propylene, polyvinylpyrrolidone and silicone. A preferred biodegradable matrix is a matrix of one of either polylactide, polyglycolide, or polylactide co-glycolide (co-polymers of lactic acid and glycolic acid).

20 The angiogenesis-modulating therapeutic composition of the present invention may be a solid, liquid or aerosol and may be administered by any known route of administration. Examples of solid therapeutic compositions include pills, creams, and implantable dosage units. The pills may be administered orally, the therapeutic creams may be administered topically. The implantable dosage unitst may be administered locally, for example at a tumor site, or which may be implanted for systemic release of the therapeutic angiogenesis-modulating composition, for example subcutaneously. Examples of liquid composition include formulations adapted for injection subcutaneously, intravenously, intraarterially, and formulations for topical and intraocular administration. Examples of aersol formulation include inhaler formulation for administration to the lungs.

The angiostatin of the present invention also can be used to generate antibodies that are specific for the inhibitor and its receptor. The antibodies can be either polyclonal antibodies or monoclonal antibodies. These antibodies that specifically bind to the angiostatin or angiostatin receptors can be used in diagnostic methods and kits that are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art to detect or quantify the angiostatin or angiostatin receptors in a body fluid or tissue. Results from these tests can be used to diagnose or predict the occurrence or recurrence of a cancer and other angiogenic mediated diseases.

The angiostatin also can be used in a diagnostic method and kit to detect and quantify antibodies capable of binding angiostatin. These kits would permit detection of circulating angiostatin antibodies which indicates the spread of micrometastases in the presence of angiostatin secreted by primary tumors *in situ*. Patients that have such circulating anti-angiostatin antibodies may be more likely to develop multiple tumors and cancers, and may be more likely to have recurrences of cancer after treatments or periods of remission. The Fab fragments of these anti-angiostatin antibodies may be used as antigens to generate anti-angiostatin Fab-fragment antisera which can be used to neutralize anti-angiostatin antibodies. Such a method would reduce the removal of circulating angiostatin by anti-angiostatin antibodies, thereby effectively elevating circulating angiostatin levels.

Another aspect of the present invention is a method of blocking the action of excess endogenous angiostatin. This can be done by passively immunizing a human or animal with antibodies specific for the undesired angiostatin in the system. This treatment can be important in treating abnormal ovulation, menstruation and placentation, and vasculogenesis. This provides a useful tool to examine the effects of angiostatin removal on metastatic processes. The Fab fragment of angiostatin antibodies contains the binding site for angiostatin. This fragment is isolated from angiostatin antibodies using

sustained-release matrix, such as biodegradable polymers, to form therapeutic compositions.

5 A sustained-release matrix, as used herein, is a matrix made of materials, usually polymers, which are degradable by enzymatic or acid/base hydrolysis or by dissolution. Once inserted into the body, the matrix is acted upon by enzymes and body fluids. The sustained-release matrix desirably is chosen from biocompatible materials such as liposomes, polylactides (polylactic acid), polyglycolide (polymer of glycolic acid), polylactide co-glycolide (co-polymers of lactic acid and glycolic acid) polyanhydrides, poly(ortho)esters, polypeptides, hyaluronic acid, collagen, chondroitin sulfate, carboxylic acids, fatty acids, phospholipids, polysaccharides, nucleic acids, polyamino acids, amino acids such as phenylalanine, tyrosine, isoleucine, polynucleotides, polyvinyl propylene, polyvinylpyrrolidone and silicone. A preferred biodegradable matrix is a matrix of one of either polylactide, polyglycolide, or polylactide co-glycolide (co-polymers of lactic acid and glycolic acid).

20 The angiogenesis-modulating therapeutic composition of the present invention may be a solid, liquid or aerosol and may be administered by any known route of administration. Examples of solid therapeutic compositions include pills, creams, and implantable dosage units. The pills may be administered orally, the therapeutic creams may be administered topically. The implantable dosage unitst may be administered locally, for example at a tumor site, or which may be implanted for systemic release of the therapeutic angiogenesis-modulating composition, for example subcutaneously. Examples of liquid composition include formulations adapted for injection subcutaneously, intravenously, intraarterially, and formulations for topical and intraocular administration. Examples of aersol formulation include inhaler formulation for administration to the lungs.

The angiostatin of the present invention also can be used to generate antibodies that are specific for the inhibitor and its receptor. The antibodies can be either polyclonal antibodies or monoclonal antibodies. These antibodies that specifically bind to the angiostatin or angiostatin receptors can be used in diagnostic methods and kits that are well known to those of ordinary skill in the art to detect or quantify the angiostatin or angiostatin receptors in a body fluid or tissue. Results from these tests can be used to diagnose or predict the occurrence or recurrence of a cancer and other angiogenic mediated diseases.

The angiostatin also can be used in a diagnostic method and kit to detect and quantify antibodies capable of binding angiostatin. These kits would permit detection of circulating angiostatin antibodies which indicates the spread of micrometastases in the presence of angiostatin secreted by primary tumors *in situ*. Patients that have such circulating anti-angiostatin antibodies may be more likely to develop multiple tumors and cancers, and may be more likely to have recurrences of cancer after treatments or periods of remission. The Fab fragments of these anti-angiostatin antibodies may be used as antigens to generate anti-angiostatin Fab-fragment antisera which can be used to neutralize anti-angiostatin antibodies. Such a method would reduce the removal of circulating angiostatin by anti-angiostatin antibodies, thereby effectively elevating circulating angiostatin levels.

Another aspect of the present invention is a method of blocking the action of excess endogenous angiostatin. This can be done by passively immunizing a human or animal with antibodies specific for the undesired angiostatin in the system. This treatment can be important in treating abnormal ovulation, menstruation and placentation, and vasculogenesis. This provides a useful tool to examine the effects of angiostatin removal on metastatic processes. The Fab fragment of angiostatin antibodies contains the binding site for angiostatin. This fragment is isolated from angiostatin antibodies using



5 techniques known to those skilled in the art. The Fab fragments of angiostatin antisera are used as antigens to generate production of anti-Fab fragment serum. Infusion of this antiserum against the Fab fragments of angiostatin prevents angiostatin from binding to angiostatin antibodies. Therapeutic benefit is obtained by neutralizing endogenous anti-angiostatin antibodies by blocking the binding of angiostatin to the Fab fragments of anti-angiostatin. The net effect of this treatment is to facilitate the ability of endogenous circulating angiostatin to reach target cells, thereby decreasing the spread of metastases.

10 It is to be understood that the present invention is contemplated to include any derivatives of the angiostatin that have endothelial inhibitory activity. The present invention includes the entire angiostatin protein, derivatives of the angiostatin protein and biologically-active fragments of the angiostatin protein. These include proteins with angiostatin activity that have amino acid substitutions or have sugars or other molecules attached to amino acid functional groups. The present invention also includes genes that code for angiostatin and the angiostatin receptor, and to proteins that are expressed by those genes.

20 The proteins and protein fragments with the angiostatin activity described above can be provided as isolated and substantially purified proteins and protein fragments in pharmaceutically acceptable formulations using formulation methods known to those of ordinary skill in the art. These formulations can be administered by standard routes. In general, the combinations may be administered by the topical, transdermal, intraperitoneal, intracranial, intracerebroventricular, intracerebral, intravaginal, intrauterine, oral, rectal or parenteral (e.g., intravenous, intraspinal, subcutaneous or intramuscular) route. In addition, the angiostatin may be incorporated into biodegradable polymers allowing for sustained release of the compound, the

polymers being implanted in the vicinity of where drug delivery is desired, for example, at the site of a tumor or implanted so that the angiostatin is slowly released systemically. Osmotic minipumps may also be used to provide controlled delivery of high concentrations of angiostatin through cannulae to the site of interest, such as directly into a metastatic growth or into the vascular supply to that tumor. The biodegradable polymers and their use are described, for example, in detail in Brem et al., *J. Neurosurg.* 74:441-446 (1991), which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

The dosage of the angiostatin of the present invention will depend on the disease state or condition being treated and other clinical factors such as weight and condition of the human or animal and the route of administration of the compound. For treating humans or animals, between approximately 0.5 mg/kilogram to 500 mg/kilogram of the angiostatin can be administered. Depending upon the half-life of the angiostatin in the particular animal or human, the angiostatin can be administered between several times per day to once a week. It is to be understood that the present invention has application for both human and veterinary use. The methods of the present invention contemplate single as well as multiple administrations, given either simultaneously or over an extended period of time.

The angiostatin formulations include those suitable for oral, rectal, ophthalmic (including intravitreal or intracameral), nasal, topical (including buccal and sublingual), intrauterine, vaginal or parenteral (including subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intramuscular, intravenous, intradermal, intracranial, intratracheal, and epidural) administration. The angiostatin formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by conventional pharmaceutical techniques. Such techniques include the step of bringing into association the active ingredient and the

5 techniques known to those skilled in the art. The Fab fragments of angiostatin antisera are used as antigens to generate production of anti-Fab fragment serum. Infusion of this antiserum against the Fab fragments of angiostatin prevents angiostatin from binding to angiostatin antibodies. Therapeutic benefit is obtained by neutralizing endogenous anti-angiostatin antibodies by blocking the binding of angiostatin to the Fab fragments of anti-angiostatin. The net effect of this treatment is to facilitate the ability of endogenous circulating angiostatin to reach target cells, thereby decreasing the spread of metastases.

10 It is to be understood that the present invention is contemplated to include any derivatives of the angiostatin that have endothelial inhibitory activity. The present invention includes the entire angiostatin protein, derivatives of the angiostatin protein and biologically-active fragments of the angiostatin protein. These include proteins with angiostatin activity that have amino acid substitutions or have sugars or other molecules attached to amino acid functional groups. The present invention also includes genes that code for angiostatin and the angiostatin receptor, and to proteins that are expressed by those genes.

15 The proteins and protein fragments with the angiostatin activity described above can be provided as isolated and substantially purified proteins and protein fragments in pharmaceutically acceptable formulations using formulation methods known to those of ordinary skill in the art. These formulations can be administered by standard routes. In general, the combinations may be administered by the topical, transdermal, intraperitoneal, intracranial, intracerebroventricular, intracerebral, intravaginal, intrauterine, oral, rectal or parenteral (e.g., intravenous, intraspinal, subcutaneous or intramuscular) route. In addition, the angiostatin may be incorporated into biodegradable polymers allowing for sustained release of the compound, the

20  
25  
30  
35

5 polymers being implanted in the vicinity of where drug delivery is desired, for example, at the site of a tumor or implanted so that the angiostatin is slowly released systemically. Osmotic minipumps may also be used to provide controlled delivery of high concentrations of angiostatin through cannulae to the site of interest, such as directly into a metastatic growth or into the vascular supply to that tumor. The biodegradable polymers and their use are described, for example, in detail in Brem et al., *J. Neurosurg.* 74:441-446 (1991), which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

10 The dosage of the angiostatin of the present invention will depend on the disease state or condition being treated and other clinical factors such as weight and condition of the human or animal and the route of administration of the compound. For treating humans or animals, between approximately 0.5 mg/kilogram to 500 mg/kilogram of the angiostatin can be administered. Depending upon the half-life of the angiostatin in the particular animal or human, the angiostatin can be administered between several times per day to once a week. It is to be understood that the present invention has application for both human and veterinary use. The methods of the present invention contemplate single as well as multiple administrations, given either simultaneously or over an extended period of time.

25 The angiostatin formulations include those suitable for oral, rectal, ophthalmic (including intravitreal or intracameral), nasal, topical (including buccal and sublingual), intrauterine, vaginal or parenteral (including subcutaneous, intraperitoneal, intramuscular, intravenous, intradermal, intracranial, intratracheal, and epidural) administration. The angiostatin formulations may conveniently be presented in unit dosage form and may be prepared by conventional pharmaceutical techniques. Such techniques include the step of bringing into association the active ingredient and the

30

35

pharmaceutical carrier(s) or excipient(s). In general, the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active ingredient with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product.

Formulations suitable for parenteral administration include aqueous and non-aqueous sterile injection solutions which may contain anti-oxidants, buffers, bacteriostats and solutes which render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient; and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions which may include suspending agents and thickening agents. The formulations may be presented in unit-dose or multi-dose containers, for example, sealed ampules and vials, and may be stored in a freeze-dried (lyophilized) condition requiring only the addition of the sterile liquid carrier, for example, water for injections, immediately prior to use. Extemporaneous injection solutions and suspensions may be prepared from sterile powders, granules and tablets of the kind previously described.

Preferred unit dosage formulations are those containing a daily dose or unit, daily sub-dose, or an appropriate fraction thereof, of the administered ingredient. It should be understood that in addition to the ingredients, particularly mentioned above, the formulations of the present invention may include other agents conventional in the art having regard to the type of formulation in question. Optionally, cytotoxic agents may be incorporated or otherwise combined with angiostatin proteins, or biologically functional peptide fragments thereof, to provide dual therapy to the patient.

Angiogenesis inhibiting peptides of the present invention can be synthesized in a standard microchemical facility and purity checked with HPLC and mass spectrophotometry. Methods of peptide synthesis, HPLC purification and mass spectrophotometry are commonly known to those skilled in these arts. Angiostatin peptides and

angiostatin receptors peptides are also produced in recombinant *E. coli* or yeast expression systems, and purified with column chromatography.

5 Different peptide fragments of the intact angiostatin molecule can be synthesized for use in several applications including, but not limited to the following; as antigens for the development of specific antisera, as agonists and antagonists active at angiostatin binding sites, as peptides to be linked to, or used in combination with, cytotoxic agents for targeted  
10 killing of cells that bind angiostatin. The amino acid sequences that comprise these peptides are selected on the basis of their position on the exterior regions of the molecule and are accessible for binding to antisera. The amino and carboxyl termini of angiostatin, as well as the mid-region of the  
15 molecule are represented separately among the fragments to be synthesized.

These peptide sequences are compared to known sequences using protein sequence databases such as GenBank, Brookhaven Protein, SWISS-PROT, and PIR to determine  
20 potential sequence homologies. This information facilitates elimination of sequences that exhibit a high degree of sequence homology to other molecules, thereby enhancing the potential for high specificity in the development of antisera, agonists and antagonists to angiostatin.

25 Angiostatin and angiostatin derived peptides can be coupled to other molecules using standard methods. The amino and carboxyl termini of angiostatin both contain tyrosine and lysine residues and are isotopically and nonisotopically labeled with many techniques, for example  
30 radiolabeling using conventional techniques (tyrosine residues-chloramine T, iodogen, lactoperoxidase; lysine residues-Bolton-Hunter reagent). These coupling techniques are well known to those skilled in the art. Alternatively, tyrosine or lysine is added to fragments that do not have these residues to  
35 facilitate labeling of reactive amino and hydroxyl groups on

pharmaceutical carrier(s) or excipient(s). In general, the formulations are prepared by uniformly and intimately bringing into association the active ingredient with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product.

Formulations suitable for parenteral administration include aqueous and non-aqueous sterile injection solutions which may contain anti-oxidants, buffers, bacteriostats and solutes which render the formulation isotonic with the blood of the intended recipient; and aqueous and non-aqueous sterile suspensions which may include suspending agents and thickening agents. The formulations may be presented in unit-dose or multi-dose containers, for example, sealed ampules and vials, and may be stored in a freeze-dried (lyophilized) condition requiring only the addition of the sterile liquid carrier, for example, water for injections, immediately prior to use. Extemporaneous injection solutions and suspensions may be prepared from sterile powders, granules and tablets of the kind previously described.

Preferred unit dosage formulations are those containing a daily dose or unit, daily sub-dose, or an appropriate fraction thereof, of the administered ingredient. It should be understood that in addition to the ingredients, particularly mentioned above, the formulations of the present invention may include other agents conventional in the art having regard to the type of formulation in question. Optionally, cytotoxic agents may be incorporated or otherwise combined with angiostatin proteins, or biologically functional peptide fragments thereof, to provide dual therapy to the patient.

Angiogenesis inhibiting peptides of the present invention can be synthesized in a standard microchemical facility and purity checked with HPLC and mass spectrophotometry. Methods of peptide synthesis, HPLC purification and mass spectrophotometry are commonly known to those skilled in these arts. Angiostatin peptides and

angiostatin receptors peptides are also produced in recombinant *E. coli* or yeast expression systems, and purified with column chromatography.

5 Different peptide fragments of the intact angiostatin molecule can be synthesized for use in several applications including, but not limited to the following; as antigens for the development of specific antisera, as agonists and antagonists active at angiostatin binding sites, as peptides to be linked to, or used in combination with, cytotoxic agents for targeted  
10 killing of cells that bind angiostatin. The amino acid sequences that comprise these peptides are selected on the basis of their position on the exterior regions of the molecule and are accessible for binding to antisera. The amino and carboxyl termini of angiostatin, as well as the mid-region of the  
15 molecule are represented separately among the fragments to be synthesized.

These peptide sequences are compared to known sequences using protein sequence databases such as GenBank, Brookhaven Protein, SWISS-PROT, and PIR to determine  
20 potential sequence homologies. This information facilitates elimination of sequences that exhibit a high degree of sequence homology to other molecules, thereby enhancing the potential for high specificity in the development of antisera, agonists and antagonists to angiostatin.

25 Angiostatin and angiostatin derived peptides can be coupled to other molecules using standard methods. The amino and carboxyl termini of angiostatin both contain tyrosine and lysine residues and are isotopically and nonisotopically labeled with many techniques, for example  
30 radiolabeling using conventional techniques (tyrosine residues-chloramine T, iodogen, lactoperoxidase; lysine residues-Bolton-Hunter reagent). These coupling techniques are well known to those skilled in the art. Alternatively, tyrosine or lysine is added to fragments that do not have these residues to  
35 facilitate labeling of reactive amino and hydroxyl groups on



the peptide. The coupling technique is chosen on the basis of the functional groups available on the amino acids including, but not limited to amino, sulfhydryl, carboxyl, amide, phenol, and imidazole. Various reagents used to effect these couplings include among others, glutaraldehyde, diazotized benzidine, carbodiimide, and p-benzoquinone.

Angiostatin peptides are chemically coupled to isotopes, enzymes, carrier proteins, cytotoxic agents, fluorescent molecules, chemiluminescent, bioluminescent and other compounds for a variety of applications. The efficiency of the coupling reaction is determined using different techniques appropriate for the specific reaction. For example, radiolabeling of an angiostatin peptide with  $^{125}\text{I}$  is accomplished using chloramine T and  $\text{Na}^{125}\text{I}$  of high specific activity. The reaction is terminated with sodium metabisulfite and the mixture is desalted on disposable columns. The labeled peptide is eluted from the column and fractions are collected. Aliquots are removed from each fraction and radioactivity measured in a gamma counter. In this manner, the unreacted  $\text{Na}^{125}\text{I}$  is separated from the labeled angiostatin peptide. The peptide fractions with the highest specific radioactivity are stored for subsequent use such as analysis of the ability to bind to angiostatin antisera.

Another application of peptide conjugation is for production of polyclonal antisera. For example, angiostatin peptides containing lysine residues are linked to purified bovine serum albumin using glutaraldehyde. The efficiency of the reaction is determined by measuring the incorporation of radiolabeled peptide. Unreacted glutaraldehyde and peptide are separated by dialysis. The conjugate is stored for subsequent use.

Antiserum against angiostatin, angiostatin analogs, peptide fragments of angiostatin and the angiostatin receptor can be generated. After peptide synthesis and purification, both monoclonal and polyclonal antisera are raised using

established techniques known to those skilled in the art. For example, polyclonal antisera may be raised in rabbits, sheep, goats or other animals. Angiostatin peptides conjugated to a carrier molecule such as bovine serum albumin, or angiostatin itself, is combined with an adjuvant mixture, emulsified and injected subcutaneously at multiple sites on the back, neck, flanks, and sometimes in the footpads. Booster injections are made at regular intervals, such as every 2 to 4 weeks. Blood samples are obtained by venipuncture, for example using the marginal ear veins after dilation, approximately 7 to 10 days after each injection. The blood samples are allowed to clot overnight at 4C and are centrifuged at approximately 2400 X g at 4C for about 30 minutes. The serum is removed, aliquoted, and stored at 4C for immediate use or at -20 to -90C for subsequent analysis.

All serum samples from generation of polyclonal antisera or media samples from production of monoclonal antisera are analyzed for determination of antibody titer. Titer is established through several means, for example, using dot blots and density analysis, and also with precipitation of radiolabeled peptide-antibody complexes using protein A, secondary antisera, cold ethanol or charcoal-dextran followed by activity measurement with a gamma counter. The highest titer antisera are also purified on affinity columns which are commercially available. Angiostatin peptides are coupled to the gel in the affinity column. Antiserum samples are passed through the column and anti-angiostatin antibodies remain bound to the column. These antibodies are subsequently eluted, collected and evaluated for determination of titer and specificity.

The highest titer angiostatin antisera is tested to establish the following; a) optimal antiserum dilution for highest specific binding of the antigen and lowest non-specific binding, b) the ability to bind increasing amounts of angiostatin peptide in a standard displacement curve, c)

the peptide. The coupling technique is chosen on the basis of the functional groups available on the amino acids including, but not limited to amino, sulfhydryl, carboxyl, amide, phenol, and imidazole. Various reagents used to effect these couplings include among others, glutaraldehyde, diazotized benzidine, carbodiimide, and p-benzoquinone.

Angiostatin peptides are chemically coupled to isotopes, enzymes, carrier proteins, cytotoxic agents, fluorescent molecules, chemiluminescent, bioluminescent and other compounds for a variety of applications. The efficiency of the coupling reaction is determined using different techniques appropriate for the specific reaction. For example, radiolabeling of an angiostatin peptide with  $^{125}\text{I}$  is accomplished using chloramine T and  $\text{Na}^{125}\text{I}$  of high specific activity. The reaction is terminated with sodium metabisulfite and the mixture is desalted on disposable columns. The labeled peptide is eluted from the column and fractions are collected. Aliquots are removed from each fraction and radioactivity measured in a gamma counter. In this manner, the unreacted  $\text{Na}^{125}\text{I}$  is separated from the labeled angiostatin peptide. The peptide fractions with the highest specific radioactivity are stored for subsequent use such as analysis of the ability to bind to angiostatin antisera.

Another application of peptide conjugation is for production of polyclonal antisera. For example, angiostatin peptides containing lysine residues are linked to purified bovine serum albumin using glutaraldehyde. The efficiency of the reaction is determined by measuring the incorporation of radiolabeled peptide. Unreacted glutaraldehyde and peptide are separated by dialysis. The conjugate is stored for subsequent use.

Antiserum against angiostatin, angiostatin analogs, peptide fragments of angiostatin and the angiostatin receptor can be generated. After peptide synthesis and purification, both monoclonal and polyclonal antisera are raised using

established techniques known to those skilled in the art. For example, polyclonal antisera may be raised in rabbits, sheep, goats or other animals. Angiostatin peptides conjugated to a carrier molecule such as bovine serum albumin, or angiostatin itself, is combined with an adjuvant mixture, emulsified and injected subcutaneously at multiple sites on the back, neck, flanks, and sometimes in the footpads. Booster injections are made at regular intervals, such as every 2 to 4 weeks. Blood samples are obtained by venipuncture, for example using the marginal ear veins after dilation, approximately 7 to 10 days after each injection. The blood samples are allowed to clot overnight at 4C and are centrifuged at approximately 2400 X g at 4C for about 30 minutes. The serum is removed, aliquoted, and stored at 4C for immediate use or at -20 to -90C for subsequent analysis.

All serum samples from generation of polyclonal antisera or media samples from production of monoclonal antisera are analyzed for determination of antibody titer. Titer is established through several means, for example, using dot blots and density analysis, and also with precipitation of radiolabeled peptide-antibody complexes using protein A, secondary antisera, cold ethanol or charcoal-dextran followed by activity measurement with a gamma counter. The highest titer antisera are also purified on affinity columns which are commercially available. Angiostatin peptides are coupled to the gel in the affinity column. Antiserum samples are passed through the column and anti-angiostatin antibodies remain bound to the column. These antibodies are subsequently eluted, collected and evaluated for determination of titer and specificity.

The highest titer angiostatin antisera is tested to establish the following; a) optimal antiserum dilution for highest specific binding of the antigen and lowest non-specific binding, b) the ability to bind increasing amounts of angiostatin peptide in a standard displacement curve, c)

potential cross-reactivity with related peptides and proteins, including plasminogen and also angiostatin of related species, d) ability to detect angiostatin peptides in extracts of plasma, urine, tissues, and in cell culture media.

5           Kits for measurement of angiostatin, and the angiostatin receptor, are also contemplated as part of the present invention. Antisera that possess the highest titer and specificity and can detect angiostatin peptides in extracts of plasma, urine, tissues, and in cell culture media are further examined to  
10           establish easy to use kits for rapid, reliable, sensitive, and specific measurement and localization of angiostatin. These assay kits include but are not limited to the following techniques; competitive and non-competitive assays, radioimmunoassay, bioluminescence and chemiluminescence  
15           assays, fluorometric assays, sandwich assays, immunoradiometric assays, dot blots, enzyme linked assays including ELISA, microtiter plates, antibody coated strips or dipsticks for rapid monitoring of urine or blood, and immunocytochemistry. For each kit the range, sensitivity,  
20           precision, reliability, specificity and reproducibility of the assay are established. Intraassay and interassay variation is established at 20%, 50% and 80% points on the standard curves of displacement or activity.

25           One example of an assay kit commonly used in research and in the clinic is a radioimmunoassay (RIA) kit. An angiostatin RIA is illustrated below. After successful radioiodination and purification of angiostatin or an angiostatin peptide, the antiserum possessing the highest titer is added at several dilutions to tubes containing a relatively  
30           constant amount of radioactivity, such as 10,000 cpm, in a suitable buffer system. Other tubes contain buffer or preimmune serum to determine the non-specific binding. After incubation at 4C for 24 hours, protein A is added and the tubes are vortexed, incubated at room temperature for 90 minutes,  
35           and centrifuged at approximately 2000 - 2500 X g at 4C to

5 precipitate the complexes of antibody bound to labeled antigen. The supernatant is removed by aspiration and the radioactivity in the pellets counted in a gamma counter. The antiserum dilution that binds approximately 10 to 40 % of the labeled peptide after subtraction of the non-specific binding is further characterized.

10 Next, a dilution range (approximately 0.1 pg to 10 ng) of the angiostatin peptide used for development of the antiserum is evaluated by adding known amounts of the peptide to tubes containing radiolabeled peptide and antiserum. After an additional incubation period, for example, 24 to 48 hours, protein A is added and the tubes centrifuged, supernatant removed and the radioactivity in the pellet counted. The displacement of the binding of radiolabeled angiostatin peptide by the unlabeled angiostatin peptide (standard) provides a standard curve. Several concentrations of other angiostatin peptide fragments, plasminogen, angiostatin from different species, and homologous peptides are added to the assay tubes to characterize the specificity of the angiostatin antiserum.

20 Extracts of various tissues, including but not limited to primary and secondary tumors, Lewis lung carcinoma, cultures of angiostatin producing cells, placenta, uterus, and other tissues such as brain, liver, and intestine, are prepared using extraction techniques that have been successfully employed to extract angiostatin. After lyophilization or Speed Vac of the tissue extracts, assay buffer is added and different aliquots are placed into the RIA tubes. Extracts of known angiostatin producing cells produce displacement curves that are parallel to the standard curve, whereas extracts of tissues that do not produce angiostatin do not displace radiolabeled angiostatin from the angiostatin antiserum. In addition, extracts of urine, plasma, and cerebrospinal fluid from animals with Lewis lung carcinoma are added to the assay tubes in increasing amounts. Parallel displacement curves indicate the

25

30

potential cross-reactivity with related peptides and proteins, including plasminogen and also angiostatin of related species, d) ability to detect angiostatin peptides in extracts of plasma, urine, tissues, and in cell culture media.

5           Kits for measurement of angiostatin, and the angiostatin receptor, are also contemplated as part of the present invention. Antisera that possess the highest titer and specificity and can detect angiostatin peptides in extracts of plasma, urine, tissues, and in cell culture media are further examined to  
10           establish easy to use kits for rapid, reliable, sensitive, and specific measurement and localization of angiostatin. These assay kits include but are not limited to the following techniques; competitive and non-competitive assays, radioimmunoassay, bioluminescence and chemiluminescence  
15           assays, fluorometric assays, sandwich assays, immunoradiometric assays, dot blots, enzyme linked assays including ELISA, microtiter plates, antibody coated strips or dipsticks for rapid monitoring of urine or blood, and immunocytochemistry. For each kit the range, sensitivity,  
20           precision, reliability, specificity and reproducibility of the assay are established. Intraassay and interassay variation is established at 20%, 50% and 80% points on the standard curves of displacement or activity.

25           One example of an assay kit commonly used in research and in the clinic is a radioimmunoassay (RIA) kit. An angiostatin RIA is illustrated below. After successful radioiodination and purification of angiostatin or an angiostatin peptide, the antiserum possessing the highest titer is added at several dilutions to tubes containing a relatively  
30           constant amount of radioactivity, such as 10,000 cpm, in a suitable buffer system. Other tubes contain buffer or preimmune serum to determine the non-specific binding. After incubation at 4C for 24 hours, protein A is added and the tubes are vortexed, incubated at room temperature for 90 minutes,  
35           and centrifuged at approximately 2000 - 2500 X g at 4C to

5 precipitate the complexes of antibody bound to labeled antigen. The supernatant is removed by aspiration and the radioactivity in the pellets counted in a gamma counter. The antiserum dilution that binds approximately 10 to 40 % of the labeled peptide after subtraction of the non-specific binding is further characterized.

10 Next, a dilution range (approximately 0.1 pg to 10 ng) of the angiostatin peptide used for development of the antiserum is evaluated by adding known amounts of the peptide to tubes containing radiolabeled peptide and antiserum. After an additional incubation period, for example, 24 to 48 hours, protein A is added and the tubes centrifuged, supernatant removed and the radioactivity in the pellet counted. The displacement of the binding of radiolabeled angiostatin peptide by the unlabeled angiostatin peptide (standard) provides a standard curve. Several concentrations of other angiostatin peptide fragments, plasminogen, angiostatin from different species, and homologous peptides are added to the assay tubes to characterize the specificity of the angiostatin antiserum.

20 Extracts of various tissues, including but not limited to primary and secondary tumors, Lewis lung carcinoma, cultures of angiostatin producing cells, placenta, uterus, and other tissues such as brain, liver, and intestine, are prepared using extraction techniques that have been successfully employed to extract angiostatin. After lyophilization or Speed Vac of the tissue extracts, assay buffer is added and different aliquots are placed into the RIA tubes. Extracts of known angiostatin producing cells produce displacement curves that are parallel to the standard curve, whereas extracts of tissues that do not produce angiostatin do not displace radiolabeled angiostatin from the angiostatin antiserum. In addition, extracts of urine, plasma, and cerebrospinal fluid from animals with Lewis lung carcinoma are added to the assay tubes in increasing amounts. Parallel displacement curves indicate the

25

30



utility of the angiostatin assay to measure angiostatin in tissues and body fluids.

Tissue extracts that contain angiostatin are additionally characterized by subjecting aliquots to reverse phase HPLC. Eluate fractions are collected, dried in Speed Vac, reconstituted in RIA buffer and analyzed in the angiostatin RIA. The maximal amount of angiostatin immunoreactivity is located in the fractions corresponding to the elution position of angiostatin.

The assay kit provides instructions, antiserum, angiostatin or angiostatin peptide, and possibly radiolabeled angiostatin and/or reagents for precipitation of bound angiostatin-angiostatin antibody complexes. The kit is useful for the measurement of angiostatin in biological fluids and tissue extracts of animals and humans with and without tumors.

Another kit is used for localization of angiostatin in tissues and cells. This angiostatin immunohistochemistry kit provides instructions, angiostatin antiserum, and possibly blocking serum and secondary antiserum linked to a fluorescent molecule such as fluorescein isothiocyanate, or to some other reagent used to visualize the primary antiserum. Immunohistochemistry techniques are well known to those skilled in the art. This angiostatin immunohistochemistry kit permits localization of angiostatin in tissue sections and cultured cells using both light and electron microscopy. It is used for both research and clinical purposes. For example, tumors are biopsied or collected and tissue sections cut with a microtome to examine sites of angiostatin production. Such information is useful for diagnostic and possibly therapeutic purposes in the detection and treatment of cancer. Another method to visualize sites of angiostatin biosynthesis involves radiolabeling nucleic acids for use in *in situ* hybridization to probe for angiostatin messenger RNA. Similarly, the angiostatin receptor can be localized, visualized and quantitated with immunohistochemistry techniques.

This invention is further illustrated by the following examples, which are not to be construed in any way as imposing limitations upon the scope thereof. On the contrary, it is to be clearly understood that resort may be had to various other embodiments, modifications, and equivalents thereof which, after reading the description herein, may suggest themselves to those skilled in the art without departing from the spirit of the present invention and/or the scope of the appended claims.

#### Example 1

*Choice of an animal-tumor system in which growth of metastasis is inhibited by the primary tumor and is accelerated after removal of the primary tumor.*

By screening a variety of murine tumors capable of inhibiting their own metastases, a Lewis lung carcinoma was selected in which the primary tumor most efficiently inhibited lung metastasis. Syngeneic C57Bl6/J six-week-old male mice were injected (subcutaneous dorsum) with  $1 \times 10^6$  tumor cells. Visible tumors first appeared after 3-4 days. When tumors were approximately  $1500 \text{ mm}^3$  in size, mice were randomized into two groups. The primary tumor was completely excised in the first group and left intact in the second group after a sham operation. Although tumors from  $500 \text{ mm}^3$  to  $3000 \text{ mm}^3$  inhibited growth of metastases,  $1500 \text{ mm}^3$  was the largest primary tumor that could be safely resected with high survival and no local recurrence.

After 21 days, all mice were sacrificed and autopsied. In mice with an intact primary tumor, there were four  $\pm 2$  visible metastases, compared to fifty  $\pm 5$  metastases in the mice in which the tumor had been removed ( $p < 0.0001$ ). These data were confirmed by lung weight, which correlates closely with tumor burden, as has been previously demonstrated. There was a 400% increase in wet lung weight

utility of the angiostatin assay to measure angiostatin in tissues and body fluids.

5 Tissue extracts that contain angiostatin are additionally characterized by subjecting aliquots to reverse phase HPLC. Eluate fractions are collected, dried in Speed Vac, reconstituted in RIA buffer and analyzed in the angiostatin RIA. The maximal amount of angiostatin immunoreactivity is located in the fractions corresponding to the elution position of angiostatin.

10 The assay kit provides instructions, antiserum, angiostatin or angiostatin peptide, and possibly radiolabeled angiostatin and/or reagents for precipitation of bound angiostatin-angiostatin antibody complexes. The kit is useful for the measurement of angiostatin in biological fluids and tissue extracts of animals and humans with and without tumors.

15 Another kit is used for localization of angiostatin in tissues and cells. This angiostatin immunohistochemistry kit provides instructions, angiostatin antiserum, and possibly blocking serum and secondary antiserum linked to a fluorescent molecule such as fluorescein isothiocyanate, or to some other reagent used to visualize the primary antiserum. Immunohistochemistry techniques are well known to those skilled in the art. This angiostatin immunohistochemistry kit permits localization of angiostatin in tissue sections and cultured cells using both light and electron microscopy. It is used for both research and clinical purposes. For example, tumors are biopsied or collected and tissue sections cut with a microtome to examine sites of angiostatin production. Such information is useful for diagnostic and possibly therapeutic purposes in the detection and treatment of cancer. Another method to visualize sites of angiostatin biosynthesis involves radiolabeling nucleic acids for use in *in situ* hybridization to probe for angiostatin messenger RNA. Similarly, the angiostatin receptor can be localized, visualized and quantitated with immunohistochemistry techniques.

20

25

30

35

This invention is further illustrated by the following examples, which are not to be construed in any way as imposing limitations upon the scope thereof. On the contrary, it is to be clearly understood that resort may be had to various other embodiments, modifications, and equivalents thereof which, after reading the description herein, may suggest themselves to those skilled in the art without departing from the spirit of the present invention and/or the scope of the appended claims.

#### Example 1

*Choice of an animal-tumor system in which growth of metastasis is inhibited by the primary tumor and is accelerated after removal of the primary tumor.*

By screening a variety of murine tumors capable of inhibiting their own metastases, a Lewis lung carcinoma was selected in which the primary tumor most efficiently inhibited lung metastasis. Syngeneic C57Bl6/J six-week-old male mice were injected (subcutaneous dorsum) with  $1 \times 10^6$  tumor cells. Visible tumors first appeared after 3-4 days. When tumors were approximately 1500 mm<sup>3</sup> in size, mice were randomized into two groups. The primary tumor was completely excised in the first group and left intact in the second group after a sham operation. Although tumors from 500 mm<sup>3</sup> to 3000 mm<sup>3</sup> inhibited growth of metastases, 1500 mm<sup>3</sup> was the largest primary tumor that could be safely resected with high survival and no local recurrence.

After 21 days, all mice were sacrificed and autopsied. In mice with an intact primary tumor, there were four +2 visible metastases, compared to fifty +5 metastases in the mice in which the tumor had been removed (  $p < 0.0001$  ). These data were confirmed by lung weight, which correlates closely with tumor burden, as has been previously demonstrated. There was a 400% increase in wet lung weight

in the mice that had their tumors removed compared to mice in which the tumor remained intact (  $p < 0.0001$  ).

This experimental model gave reproducible data and the experiment described is reproducible. This tumor is labeled "Lewis lung carcinoma - low metastatic" (LLC-Low). The tumor also suppressed metastases in a nearly identical pattern in SCID mice, which are deficient in both B and T lymphocytes.

10

### Example 2

*Isolation of a variant of Lewis lung carcinoma tumor that is highly metastatic, whether or not the primary tumor is removed.*

15

A highly metastatic variant of Lewis lung carcinoma arose spontaneously from the LLC-Low cell line of Example 1 in one group of mice and has been isolated according to the methods described in Example 1 and repeatedly transplanted. This tumor (LLC-High) forms more than 30 visible lung metastases whether or not the primary tumor is present.

20

### Example 3

*Size of metastases and proliferation rate of tumor cells within them. Effect of the primary tumor that inhibits metastases (LLC-Low).*

25

C57BI6/J mice were used in all experiments. Mice were inoculated subcutaneously with LLC-Low cells, and 14 days later the primary tumor was removed in half of the mice. At 5, 10 and 15 days after the tumor had been removed, mice were sacrificed. Histological sections of lung metastases were obtained. Mice with an intact primary tumor had micrometastases in the lung which were not neovascularized. These metastases were restricted to a diameter of 12-15 cell layers and did not show a significant size increase even 15 days after tumor removal. In contrast, animals from which the

30

35

5 primary tumor was removed, revealed large vascularized metastases as early as 5 days after operation. These metastases underwent a further 4-fold increase in volume by the 15th day after the tumor was removed (as reflected by lung weight and histology). Approximately 50% of the animals who had a primary tumor removed died of lung metastases before the end of the experiment. All animals with an intact primary tumor survived to the end of the experiment.

10 Replication rate of tumor cells within metastases was determined by counting nuclei stained with BrdU which had been previously injected into the mice. The high percentage of tumor cells incorporating BrdU in small, avascular metastases of animals with an intact primary tumor was equivalent to the BrdU incorporation of tumor cells in the  
15 large vascularized metastases of mice from which the primary tumor had been removed (Figure 3). This finding suggests that the presence of a primary tumor has no direct effect on the replication rate of tumor cells within a metastasis.

20 In Figure 3, the left panel shows BrdU labeling index of tumor cells in the lung in the presence or absence of a primary tumor. Before immunohistochemical staining, sections were permeabilized with 0.2 M HCl for 10 minutes and digested with 1 µg/ml proteinase K (Boehringer Mannheim GmbH, Mannheim, Germany) in 0.2 M Tris-HCl, 2  
25 mM CaCl<sub>2</sub> at 37° C for 15 minutes. Labeling index was estimated by counting percentage of positive nuclei at 250 power. The right panel of Figure 3 depicts an analysis of total lung weight of tumors with primary tumors intact or removed 5, 10 and 15 days after operation. Animals were sacrificed 6  
30 hours after intraperitoneal injection of BrdU (0.75 mg/mouse).

in the mice that had their tumors removed compared to mice in which the tumor remained intact (  $p < 0.0001$  ).

This experimental model gave reproducible data and the experiment described is reproducible. This tumor is labeled "Lewis lung carcinoma - low metastatic" (LLC-Low). The tumor also suppressed metastases in a nearly identical pattern in SCID mice, which are deficient in both B and T lymphocytes.

5

### Example 2

*Isolation of a variant of Lewis lung carcinoma tumor that is highly metastatic, whether or not the primary tumor is removed.*

10

A highly metastatic variant of Lewis lung carcinoma arose spontaneously from the LLC-Low cell line of Example 1 in one group of mice and has been isolated according to the methods described in Example 1 and repeatedly transplanted. This tumor (LLC-High) forms more than 30 visible lung metastases whether or not the primary tumor is present.

15

### Example 3

*Size of metastases and proliferation rate of tumor cells within them. Effect of the primary tumor that inhibits metastases (LLC-Low).*

20

C57BI6/J mice were used in all experiments. Mice were inoculated subcutaneously with LLC-Low cells, and 14 days later the primary tumor was removed in half of the mice. At 5, 10 and 15 days after the tumor had been removed, mice were sacrificed. Histological sections of lung metastases were obtained. Mice with an intact primary tumor had micrometastases in the lung which were not neovascularized. These metastases were restricted to a diameter of 12-15 cell layers and did not show a significant size increase even 15 days after tumor removal. In contrast, animals from which the

25

30

35

5 primary tumor was removed, revealed large vascularized metastases as early as 5 days after operation. These metastases underwent a further 4-fold increase in volume by the 15th day after the tumor was removed (as reflected by lung weight and histology). Approximately 50% of the animals who had a primary tumor removed died of lung metastases before the end of the experiment. All animals with an intact primary tumor survived to the end of the experiment.

10 Replication rate of tumor cells within metastases was determined by counting nuclei stained with BrdU which had been previously injected into the mice. The high percentage of tumor cells incorporating BrdU in small, avascular metastases of animals with an intact primary tumor was equivalent to the BrdU incorporation of tumor cells in the  
15 large vascularized metastases of mice from which the primary tumor had been removed (Figure 3). This finding suggests that the presence of a primary tumor has no direct effect on the replication rate of tumor cells within a metastasis.

20 In Figure 3, the left panel shows BrdU labeling index of tumor cells in the lung in the presence or absence of a primary tumor. Before immunohistochemical staining, sections were permeabilized with 0.2 M HCl for 10 minutes and digested with 1  $\mu$ g/ml proteinase K (Boehringer Mannheim GmbH, Mannheim, Germany) in 0.2 M Tris-HCl, 2  
25 mM  $\text{CaCl}_2$  at 37° C for 15 minutes. Labeling index was estimated by counting percentage of positive nuclei at 250 power. The right panel of Figure 3 depicts an analysis of total lung weight of tumors with primary tumors intact or removed 5, 10 and 15 days after operation. Animals were sacrificed 6  
30 hours after intraperitoneal injection of BrdU (0.75 mg/mouse).



#### Example 4

##### *Inhibition of angiogenesis in lung metastases in the presence of an intact primary tumor.*

5 To measure the degree of vascularization in lung metastases, tissues were stained with antibodies against von Willebrand factor (an endothelial specific marker, available from Dako Inc., Carpinteria, CA). Metastases from animals with intact tumors formed a thin cuff (8-12 tumor cell layers) around existing pulmonary vessels. Except for the endothelial cells of the vessel lining, no or few cells were positive for von Willebrand factor. In contrast, lung metastases of animals 5 days after removal of the primary tumor were not only larger but were also infiltrated with capillary sprouts containing endothelial cells which stained strongly for von Willebrand factor.

10 In immunohistochemical analysis of the presence of endothelial cells in lung metastases, a lung metastasis with the primary lung tumor intact 19 days after inoculation, had a cuff of tumor cells around a pre-existing microvessel in the lung. The metastasis was limited to 8 to 12 cell layers. There was no evidence of neovascularization around the microvessel, and it did not contain any new microvessels. This was typical of the maximum size of an avascular pre-angiogenic metastasis.

25 In an immunohistochemical analysis of tissue collected five days after the primary tumor was resected (19 days after inoculation of the primary tumor), the metastasis surrounded a pre-existing vessel in the lung. In contrast, in the sample where the primary tumor was not resected, the tumor was neovascularized. Thus, an intact primary tumor inhibits formation of new capillary blood vessels in metastases, but proliferation of tumor cells within a metastasis are not affected by the primary tumor.

**Example 5**

*A primary tumor inhibits angiogenesis of a second tumor implanted in the mouse cornea. Growth of this second tumor is inhibited.*

5                   A 0.25 to 0.5 mm<sup>2</sup> Lewis lung tumor (LLC-Low) was implanted in the mouse cornea on day 0. (Muthukkaruppan Vr., et al., Angiogenesis in the mouse cornea. *Science* 205:1416-1418, 1979) A primary tumor was formed by inoculating 1 x 10<sup>6</sup> LLC-Low cells subcutaneously  
10                   in the dorsum, either 4 or 7 days before the corneal implant; or on the day of the corneal implant; or 4 or 7 days after the corneal implant. Control mice received the corneal implant but not the subcutaneous tumor. Other control mice received the corneal implant and an inoculation of LLC-High tumor cells in  
15                   the dorsum 4 days before the corneal implant. The corneas were evaluated daily by slit-lamp stereomicroscopy for the growth of the corneal tumor (measured by an ocular micrometer) and for the growth of new capillary vessels from the edge of the corneal limbus.

20                   In control mice not bearing a primary subcutaneous tumor, a majority of corneas (6/8) developed neovascularization starting at day 6 to 7 days after corneal implantation and continuing to day 10. By day 10, the vascularized corneal tumors had reached approximately a  
25                   quarter of the volume of the whole eye. In the presence of the primary subcutaneous LLC-Low tumor, the corneal implants did not become vascularized if the primary tumor was in place by at least 4 days or more before the corneal implant (Table 1). In the absence of neovascularization, corneal tumors grew  
30                   slowly as thin, white, avascular discs within the cornea.

                    However, if the primary tumor was not implanted until 4 days after the corneal implant, corneas became vascularized and 3/3 corneal tumors grew at similar rates as the non-tumor bearing controls. In the presence of the primary  
35                   subcutaneous LLC-High tumor, the majority of corneas (2/3)

#### Example 4

##### *Inhibition of angiogenesis in lung metastases in the presence of an intact primary tumor.*

5 To measure the degree of vascularization in lung metastases, tissues were stained with antibodies against von Willebrand factor (an endothelial specific marker, available from Dako Inc., Carpinteria, CA). Metastases from animals with intact tumors formed a thin cuff (8-12 tumor cell layers) around existing pulmonary vessels. Except for the endothelial cells of the vessel lining, no or few cells were positive for von Willebrand factor. In contrast, lung metastases of animals 10 5 days after removal of the primary tumor were not only larger but were also infiltrated with capillary sprouts containing endothelial cells which stained strongly for von Willebrand factor. 15

In immunohistochemical analysis of the presence of endothelial cells in lung metastases, a lung metastasis with the primary lung tumor intact 19 days after inoculation, had a cuff of tumor cells around a pre-existing microvessel in the lung. The metastasis was limited to 8 to 12 cell layers. There was no evidence of neovascularization around the microvessel, and it did not contain any new microvessels. This was typical of the maximum size of an avascular pre-angiogenic metastasis. 20

25 In an immunohistochemical analysis of tissue collected five days after the primary tumor was resected (19 days after inoculation of the primary tumor), the metastasis surrounded a pre-existing vessel in the lung. In contrast, in the sample where the primary tumor was not resected, the tumor was neovascularized. Thus, an intact primary tumor inhibits formation of new capillary blood vessels in metastases, but proliferation of tumor cells within a metastasis are not affected by the primary tumor. 30

### Example 5

*A primary tumor inhibits angiogenesis of a second tumor implanted in the mouse cornea. Growth of this second tumor is inhibited.*

5                   A 0.25 to 0.5 mm<sup>2</sup> Lewis lung tumor (LLC-Low) was implanted in the mouse cornea on day 0. (Muthukkaruppan Vr., et al., Angiogenesis in the mouse cornea. *Science* 205:1416-1418, 1979) A primary tumor was formed by inoculating 1 x 10<sup>6</sup> LLC-Low cells subcutaneously  
10                   in the dorsum, either 4 or 7 days before the corneal implant; or on the day of the corneal implant; or 4 or 7 days after the corneal implant. Control mice received the corneal implant but not the subcutaneous tumor. Other control mice received the corneal implant and an inoculation of LLC-High tumor cells in  
15                   the dorsum 4 days before the corneal implant. The corneas were evaluated daily by slit-lamp stereomicroscopy for the growth of the corneal tumor (measured by an ocular micrometer) and for the growth of new capillary vessels from the edge of the corneal limbus.

20                   In control mice not bearing a primary subcutaneous tumor, a majority of corneas (6/8) developed neovascularization starting at day 6 to 7 days after corneal implantation and continuing to day 10. By day 10, the vascularized corneal tumors had reached approximately a  
25                   quarter of the volume of the whole eye. In the presence of the primary subcutaneous LLC-Low tumor, the corneal implants did not become vascularized if the primary tumor was in place by at least 4 days or more before the corneal implant (Table 1). In the absence of neovascularization, corneal tumors grew  
30                   slowly as thin, white, avascular discs within the cornea.

                    However, if the primary tumor was not implanted until 4 days after the corneal implant, corneas became vascularized and 3/3 corneal tumors grew at similar rates as the non-tumor bearing controls. In the presence of the primary  
35                   subcutaneous LLC-High tumor, the majority of corneas (2/3)

developed neovascularization starting at day 7 after corneal implantation and continuing to day 10. By day 10, the vascularized corneal tumors again had reached approximately a quarter of the volume of the whole eye.

5

**Table 1.**

Inhibition of tumor angiogenesis in the cornea by a primary subcutaneous tumor. [All primary tumors are LLC-Low except (\*) which is LLC-High].

Day of eye implant	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Day of primary tumor implant	-7	-4	-4*	0	none	+4	+7
Number of mice with new corneal vessels at day 10	2/10	0/9	2/3	2/3	6/8	3/3	2/3

10

It would be expected that 0/10 corneas would show neovascularization when the primary LLC-Low subcutaneous tumor was implanted 7 days before the eye tumor implant (i.e.-7). However, 2 of the tumors (2/10) had become necrotic because they were too large ( $> 3 \text{ cm}^3$ ).

15

**Example 6**

*Primary intact tumor inhibits angiogenesis induced by a secondary subcutaneous implant of basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF.).*

20

Although the experiments described in Examples V and VI show that a primary tumor inhibits angiogenesis in a secondary metastasis, these studies do not reveal whether the primary tumor: (i) inhibits endothelial proliferation (or angiogenesis) directly, or (ii) indirectly by down-regulating the angiogenic activity of the metastatic tumor cells. To distinguish between these two possibilities, a focus of subcutaneous angiogenesis was induced by an implant of matrigel containing basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF). (Passaniti A, *et al.*, A simple, quantitative method for assessing angiogenesis and anti-angiogenic agents using reconstituted basement membrane, heparin and fibroblast growth factor. *Lab. Invest.* 67:519, 1992)

25

30

Matrigel (an extract of basement membrane proteins), containing either 25 or 50 ng/ml bFGF in the presence of heparin, was injected subcutaneously on the ventral surface of normal and tumor-bearing mice (LLC-Low). Mice were sacrificed 4 days later and hemoglobin concentration in the gel was measured to quantify blood vessel formation. It has previously been shown that the number of new vessels which enter the matrigel is correlated with hemoglobin concentration. (Folkman J., Angiogenesis and its inhibitors in "Important Advances in Oncology 1985", VT DeVita, S. Hellman and S. Rosenberg, editors, J.B. Lippincott, Philadelphia 1985) Some gels were also prepared for histological examination. In normal mice, matrigel pellets which contained 50 ng/ml bFGF were completely red. They were heavily invaded by new capillary vessels, and contained 2.4 g/dl hemoglobin. Matrigel which lacked bFGF was translucent and gray and contained only 0.4 g/dl hemoglobin (a 6-fold difference). In contrast, matrigel from mice with a primary tumor contained only 0.5 g/dl (Figure 4).

The near complete inhibition of angiogenesis in this experiment suggests that the presence of a Lewis lung primary tumor can inhibit bFGF-induced angiogenesis directly.

#### Example 7

*Transfer of serum from a tumor-bearing animal to an animal from which the primary tumor has been removed suppresses metastases.*

Mice were implanted with Lewis lung carcinoma as described above. After 15 days, when tumors were approximately 1500 mm<sup>3</sup>, the mice were randomized into four groups. Three groups underwent complete surgical resection of the primary tumor; in one group the tumors were left in place (after a sham surgical procedure). The mice in the three resection groups then received daily intraperitoneal injections

developed neovascularization starting at day 7 after corneal implantation and continuing to day 10. By day 10, the vascularized corneal tumors again had reached approximately a quarter of the volume of the whole eye.

5

**Table 1.**

Inhibition of tumor angiogenesis in the cornea by a primary subcutaneous tumor. [All primary tumors are LLC-Low except (\*) which is LLC-High].

Day of eye implant	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Day of primary tumor implant	-7	-4	-4*	0	none	+4	+7
Number of mice with new corneal vessels at day 10	2/10	0/9	2/3	2/3	6/8	3/3	2/3

10

It would be expected that 0/10 corneas would show neovascularization when the primary LLC-Low subcutaneous tumor was implanted 7 days before the eye tumor implant (i.e.-7). However, 2 of the tumors (2/10) had become necrotic because they were too large ( $> 3 \text{ cm}^3$ ).

15

**Example 6**

*Primary intact tumor inhibits angiogenesis induced by a secondary subcutaneous implant of basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF.).*

20

Although the experiments described in Examples V and VI show that a primary tumor inhibits angiogenesis in a secondary metastasis, these studies do not reveal whether the primary tumor: (i) inhibits endothelial proliferation (or angiogenesis) directly, or (ii) indirectly by down-regulating the angiogenic activity of the metastatic tumor cells. To distinguish between these two possibilities, a focus of subcutaneous angiogenesis was induced by an implant of matrigel containing basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF). (Passaniti A, *et al.*, A simple, quantitative method for assessing angiogenesis and anti-angiogenic agents using reconstituted basement membrane, heparin and fibroblast growth factor. *Lab. Invest.* 67:519, 1992)

25

30

Matrigel (an extract of basement membrane proteins), containing either 25 or 50 ng/ml bFGF in the presence of heparin, was injected subcutaneously on the ventral surface of normal and tumor-bearing mice (LLC-Low). Mice were sacrificed 4 days later and hemoglobin concentration in the gel was measured to quantify blood vessel formation. It has previously been shown that the number of new vessels which enter the matrigel is correlated with hemoglobin concentration. (Folkman J., *Angiogenesis and its inhibitors in "Important Advances in Oncology 1985"*, VT DeVita, S. Hellman and S. Rosenberg, editors, J.B. Lippincott, Philadelphia 1985) Some gels were also prepared for histological examination. In normal mice, matrigel pellets which contained 50 ng/ml bFGF were completely red. They were heavily invaded by new capillary vessels, and contained 2.4 g/dl hemoglobin. Matrigel which lacked bFGF was translucent and gray and contained only 0.4 g/dl hemoglobin (a 6-fold difference). In contrast, matrigel from mice with a primary tumor contained only 0.5 g/dl (Figure 4).

The near complete inhibition of angiogenesis in this experiment suggests that the presence of a Lewis lung primary tumor can inhibit bFGF-induced angiogenesis directly.

#### Example 7

*Transfer of serum from a tumor-bearing animal to an animal from which the primary tumor has been removed suppresses metastases.*

Mice were implanted with Lewis lung carcinoma as described above. After 15 days, when tumors were approximately 1500 mm<sup>3</sup>, the mice were randomized into four groups. Three groups underwent complete surgical resection of the primary tumor; in one group the tumors were left in place (after a sham surgical procedure). The mice in the three resection groups then received daily intraperitoneal injections



of saline, serum from normal nontumor bearing mice, or serum from mice with 1500 mm<sup>3</sup> Lewis lung carcinomas. The group of mice with the tumors left intact received intraperitoneal saline injections. All mice were treated for 21 days, after which the animals were euthanized and lung metastases were counted (Table 2).

Table 2

Treatment (Intraperitoneal Injections)	Primary Tumor Removed			Primary Tumor Intact
	Saline	Serum from normal mice	Serum from tumor- bearing mice	Saline Injections
Number of Lung Metastases:	55±5	50±4	7±2	3±1

These results were confirmed by lung weight.  $p = < 0.0001$  for the difference between the two groups [(55 & 50) vs. (7 & 3)]. Similar results have been obtained using angiostatin from the urine of tumor-bearing animals.

### Example 8

#### *Bovine capillary endothelial (BCE) cell assay*

BCE cells are used between passages 9 and 14 only. At day 0, BCE cells are plated onto gelatinized (1.5 % gelatin in PBS at 37°, 10% CO<sub>2</sub> for 24 hours and then rinsed with 0.5 ml PBS) 24 well plates at a concentration of 12,500 cells/well. Cell counts are performed using a hemocytometer. Cells are plated in 500µl DMEM with 10% heat-inactivated (56°C for 20 minutes) bovine calf serum and 1% glutamine-pen-strep (GPS).

BCE cells are challenged as follows: Media is removed and replaced with 250 µl of DMEM/5% BCS/1%GPS. The sample to be tested is then added to wells. (The amount varies depending on the sample being tested) Plates are placed at 37°C/10% CO<sub>2</sub> for approximately 10

minutes. 250  $\mu$ l of DMEM/5% BCS/1% GPS with 2ng/ml bFGF is added to each well. The final media is 500 $\mu$ l of DMEM/5% BCS/1%GPS/ with 1 ng/ml bFGF. The plate is returned to 37°C/10% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for 72 hours.

5                   At day 4, cells are counted by removing the medium and then trypsinizing all wells (0.5 ml trypsin/EDTA) for 2 to 3 minutes. The suspended cells are then transferred to scintillation vials with 9.5 ml Hemetall and counted using a  
10                   Coulter counter. A unit of activity is that amount of serum containing angiostatin that is capable of producing half-maximal inhibition of capillary endothelial proliferation when endothelial cells are incubated in bFGF 1 ng/ml for 72 hours.

#### Example 9

15                   *Serum from mice bearing the low metastatic Lewis lung tumor (LLC-Low) inhibits capillary endothelial cell proliferation in vitro.*

                  Bovine capillary endothelial cells were stimulated by basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF 1 ng/ml), in a 72-hour proliferation assay. The serum of tumor-bearing mice added to these cultures inhibited endothelial cell proliferation in a dose-dependent and reversible manner. Normal serum was not inhibitory (Figure 5). Endothelial cell proliferation was inhibited in a similar manner (relative to controls) by  
20                   serum obtained from tumor-bearing nu/nu mice and SCID mice. After the primary tumor was removed, angiostatin activity disappeared from the serum by 3-5 days.

                  Tumor-bearing serum also inhibited bovine aortic endothelial cells and endothelial cells derived from a  
25                   spontaneous mouse hemangioendothelioma, (Obeso, et al., "Methods in Laboratory Investigation, A Hemangioendothelioma-derived cell line; Its use as a Model for the Study of Endothelial Cell Biology," *Lab Invest.*, 63(2), pgs 259-269, 1990) but did not inhibit Lewis lung tumor cells, 3T3  
30

of saline, serum from normal nontumor bearing mice, or serum from mice with 1500 mm<sup>3</sup> Lewis lung carcinomas. The group of mice with the tumors left intact received intraperitoneal saline injections. All mice were treated for 21 days, after which the animals were euthanized and lung metastases were counted (Table 2).

Table 2

Treatment (Intraperitoneal Injections)	Primary Tumor Removed			Primary Tumor Intact
	Saline	Serum from normal mice	Serum from tumor- bearing mice	Saline Injections
Number of Lung Metastases:	55±5	50±4	7±2	3±1

These results were confirmed by lung weight.  $p = < 0.0001$  for the difference between the two groups [(55 & 50) vs. (7 & 3)]. Similar results have been obtained using angiostatin from the urine of tumor-bearing animals.

### Example 8

#### *Bovine capillary endothelial (BCE) cell assay*

BCE cells are used between passages 9 and 14 only. At day 0, BCE cells are plated onto gelatinized (1.5 % gelatin in PBS at 37°, 10% CO<sub>2</sub> for 24 hours and then rinsed with 0.5 ml PBS) 24 well plates at a concentration of 12,500 cells/well. Cell counts are performed using a hemocytometer. Cells are plated in 500µl DMEM with 10% heat-inactivated (56°C for 20 minutes) bovine calf serum and 1% glutamine-pen-strep (GPS).

BCE cells are challenged as follows: Media is removed and replaced with 250 µl of DMEM/5% BCS/1%GPS. The sample to be tested is then added to wells. (The amount varies depending on the sample being tested) Plates are placed at 37°C/10% CO<sub>2</sub> for approximately 10

minutes. 250  $\mu$ l of DMEM/5% BCS/1% GPS with 2ng/ml bFGF is added to each well. The final media is 500 $\mu$ l of DMEM/5% BCS/1%GPS/ with 1 ng/ml bFGF. The plate is returned to 37°C/10% CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for 72 hours.

5                   At day 4, cells are counted by removing the medium and then trypsinizing all wells (0.5 ml trypsin/EDTA) for 2 to 3 minutes. The suspended cells are then transferred to scintillation vials with 9.5 ml Hemetall and counted using a  
10                   Coulter counter. A unit of activity is that amount of serum containing angiostatin that is capable of producing half-maximal inhibition of capillary endothelial proliferation when endothelial cells are incubated in bFGF 1 ng/ml for 72 hours.

#### Example 9

15                   *Serum from mice bearing the low metastatic Lewis lung tumor (LLC-Low) inhibits capillary endothelial cell proliferation in vitro.*

                  Bovine capillary endothelial cells were stimulated by basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF 1 ng/ml), in a 72-hour proliferation assay. The serum of tumor-bearing mice added to these cultures inhibited endothelial cell proliferation in a dose-dependent and reversible manner. Normal serum was not inhibitory (Figure 5). Endothelial cell proliferation was inhibited in a similar manner (relative to controls) by  
20                   serum obtained from tumor-bearing nu/nu mice and SCID mice. After the primary tumor was removed, angiostatin activity disappeared from the serum by 3-5 days.

                  Tumor-bearing serum also inhibited bovine aortic endothelial cells and endothelial cells derived from a  
25                   spontaneous mouse hemangioendothelioma, (Obeso, et al., "Methods in Laboratory Investigation, A Hemangioendothelioma-derived cell line; Its use as a Model for the Study of Endothelial Cell Biology," *Lab Invest.*, 63(2), pgs 259-269, 1990) but did not inhibit Lewis lung tumor cells, 3T3  
30

fibroblasts, aortic smooth muscle cells, mink lung epithelium, or W138 human fetal lung fibroblasts.

#### Example 10

5     *Serum from mice bearing the Lewis lung tumor (LLC-High) that does not inhibit metastases, does not inhibit capillary endothelial cell proliferation in vitro.*

10     Serum from mice bearing a primary tumor of the LLC-High did not significantly inhibit proliferation of bFGF-stimulated bovine capillary endothelial cells relative to controls. Also, when this serum was subjected to the first two steps of purification (heparin-Sepharose chromatography and gel filtration), angiostatin activity was not found in any

15

#### Example 11

*Ascites from Lewis lung carcinoma (low metastatic), also generates angiostatin serum.*

20     Mice received intraperitoneal injections of either LLC-Low or LLC-High tumor cells ( $10^6$ ), and one week later, 1-2 ml of bloody ascites was obtained from each of 10-20 mice. Mesenteric tumor seeding was seen. The mice were then euthanized. Serum was obtained by cardiac puncture. Serum was also obtained from normal, non-tumor-bearing mice as a

25     control. Serum and ascites were centrifuged to remove cells, and the supernate was assayed on bovine capillary endothelial cells stimulated by bFGF (1 ng/ml) (see Example IX). Ascites originating from both tumor types stimulated significant proliferation of capillary endothelial cells (e.g., 100% proliferation) over controls after 72 hours (Figure 6). In

30     contrast, serum from the low metastatic mice inhibited endothelial cell proliferation (inhibition to 79% of controls). The serum from the high metastatic line was stimulatory by 200%.

5        These data show that the ascites of the low  
metastatic line contains a predominance of endothelial growth  
stimulator over angiostatin. This condition is analogous to a  
solid primary tumor. Furthermore, angiostatin activity appears  
10       in the serum, as though it were unopposed by stimulatory  
activity. This pattern is similar to the solid primary tumor  
(LLC-Low). The ascites from the high metastatic tumor  
(LLC-High) also appears to contain a predominance of  
15       endothelial cell stimulator, but angiostatin cannot be identified  
in the serum.

#### Example 12

15       *Fractionation of angiostatin from serum by column  
chromatography and analysis of growth-inhibitory fractions by  
SDS-PAGE.*

20       To purify the angiostatin(s), serum was pooled  
from tumor-bearing mice. The inhibitory activity, assayed  
according the above-described *in vitro* inhibitor activity assay,  
was sequentially chromatographed using heparin-Sepharose,  
25       Biogel AO.5mm agarose, and several cycles of C4-reverse  
phase high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC).  
SDS-PAGE of the HPLC fraction which contained endothelial  
inhibitory activity, revealed a discrete band of apparent  
reduced  $M_r$  of 38,000 Daltons, which was purified  
30       approximately 1 million-fold (see Table 3) to a specific  
activity of approximately  $2 \times 10^7$ . At different stages of the  
purification, pooled fractions were tested with specific  
antibodies for the presence of known endothelial inhibitors.  
Platelet factor-4, thrombospondin, or transforming growth  
factor beta, were not found in the partially purified or purified  
fractions.

fibroblasts, aortic smooth muscle cells, mink lung epithelium, or W138 human fetal lung fibroblasts.

#### Example 10

5     *Serum from mice bearing the Lewis lung tumor (LLC-High) that does not inhibit metastases, does not inhibit capillary endothelial cell proliferation in vitro.*

10     Serum from mice bearing a primary tumor of the LLC-High did not significantly inhibit proliferation of bFGF-stimulated bovine capillary endothelial cells relative to controls. Also, when this serum was subjected to the first two steps of purification (heparin-Sepharose chromatography and gel filtration), angiostatin activity was not found in any fractions.

15

#### Example 11

*Ascites from Lewis lung carcinoma (low metastatic), also generates angiostatin serum.*

20     Mice received intraperitoneal injections of either LLC-Low or LLC-High tumor cells ( $10^6$ ), and one week later, 1-2 ml of bloody ascites was obtained from each of 10-20 mice. Mesenteric tumor seeding was seen. The mice were then euthanized. Serum was obtained by cardiac puncture. Serum was also obtained from normal, non-tumor-bearing mice as a control. Serum and ascites were centrifuged to remove cells, and the supernate was assayed on bovine capillary endothelial cells stimulated by bFGF (1 ng/ml) (see Example IX). Ascites originating from both tumor types stimulated significant proliferation of capillary endothelial cells (e.g., 100% proliferation) over controls after 72 hours (Figure 6). In contrast, serum from the low metastatic mice inhibited endothelial cell proliferation (inhibition to 79% of controls). The serum from the high metastatic line was stimulatory by 200%.

25

30

5        These data show that the ascites of the low  
metastatic line contains a predominance of endothelial growth  
stimulator over angiostatin. This condition is analogous to a  
solid primary tumor. Furthermore, angiostatin activity appears  
10       in the serum, as though it were unopposed by stimulatory  
activity. This pattern is similar to the solid primary tumor  
(LLC-Low). The ascites from the high metastatic tumor  
(LLC-High) also appears to contain a predominance of  
15       endothelial cell stimulator, but angiostatin cannot be identified  
in the serum.

#### Example 12

15       *Fractionation of angiostatin from serum by column  
chromatography and analysis of growth-inhibitory fractions by  
SDS-PAGE.*

20       To purify the angiostatin(s), serum was pooled  
from tumor-bearing mice. The inhibitory activity, assayed  
according the above-described *in vitro* inhibitor activity assay,  
was sequentially chromatographed using heparin-Sepharose,  
25       Biogel AO.5mm agarose, and several cycles of C4-reverse  
phase high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC).  
SDS-PAGE of the HPLC fraction which contained endothelial  
inhibitory activity, revealed a discrete band of apparent  
reduced  $M_r$  of 38,000 Daltons, which was purified  
30       approximately 1 million-fold (see Table 3) to a specific  
activity of approximately  $2 \times 10^7$ . At different stages of the  
purification, pooled fractions were tested with specific  
antibodies for the presence of known endothelial inhibitors.  
Platelet factor-4, thrombospondin, or transforming growth  
factor beta, were not found in the partially purified or purified  
fractions.



Table 3.

	Specific activity (units*/mg)	Fold purification
Serum	1.69	1
Heparin Sepharose	14.92	8.8
Bio-gel AO.5m	69.96	41.4
HPLC/C4	$2 \times 10^7$	$1.2 \times 10^6$

\*A unit of activity is that amount of serum containing angiostatin that is capable of producing half-maximal inhibition of capillary endothelial proliferation when endothelial cells are incubated in bFGF 1 ng/ml for 72 hours.

### Example 13

*Fractionation of angiostatin from urine by column chromatography and analysis of growth-inhibitory fractions by SDS-PAGE.*

Purification of the endothelial cell inhibitor(s) from serum is hampered by the small volume of serum that can be obtained from each mouse and by the large amount of protein in the serum.

Urine from tumor bearing mice was analyzed and found that it contains an inhibitor of endothelial cell proliferation that is absent from the urine of non-tumor bearing mice and from mice with LLC-high tumors. Purification of the endothelial cell inhibitory activity was carried out by the same strategy that was employed for purification of serum (described above) (Figure 7).

Figure 7 shows C4 reverse phase chromatography of partially purified serum or urine from tumor-bearing animals. All fractions were assayed on bovine capillary endothelial cells with bFGF in a 72-hour proliferation assay as described in Example IX. A discrete peak of inhibition was seen in both cases eluting at 30 - 35 % acetonitrile in fraction 23. SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis of inhibitory fraction from the third cycle of C4 reverse phase chromatography of serum from tumor-bearing animals showed a single band at about 38,000 Daltons.

### Example 14

#### *Characterization of circulating angiostatin.*

5           Endothelial inhibition was assayed according to  
the procedure described in Example 9. Angiostatin was  
isolated on a Synchropak HPLC C4 column. (Synchrom, Inc.  
Lafayette, IN) The inhibitor was eluted at 30 to 35%  
acetonitrile gradient. On a sodium dodecyl sulfate  
polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) gel under  
10       reducing conditions ( $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol(5% v/v), the protein  
band with activity eluted at 38 kilodaltons. Under non-  
reducing conditions, the protein with activity eluted at 28  
kilodaltons. The activity is found at similar points whether the  
initial sample was isolated from urine or from serum.  
15       Activity was not detected with any other bands.

Activity associated with the bands was lost when  
heated (100°C for 10 minutes) or treated with trypsin. When  
the band with activity was extracted with a water/chloroform  
mixture (1:1), the activity was found in the aqueous phase  
20       only.

### Example 15

#### *Purification of inhibitory fragments from human plasminogen:*

25           Plasminogen lysine binding site I was obtained  
from Sigma Chemical Company. The preparation is purified  
human plasminogen after digestion with elastase. Lysine  
binding site I obtained in this manner is a population of  
peptides that contain, in aggregate, at least the first three  
triple-loop structures (numbers 1 through 3) in the plasmin A-  
30       chain (Kringle 1 +2+3). (Sottrup-Jensen, L., et al. in Progress  
in Chemical Fibrinolysis and Thrombolysis, Vol. 3, 191,  
Davidson, J.F., et al. eds. Raven Press, New York 1978 and  
Wiman, B., et al., *Biochemica et Biophysica Acta*, 579, 142  
(1979)). Plasminogen lysine binding site I (Sigma Chemical  
35       Company, St. Louis, MO) was resuspended in water and

Table 3.

	Specific activity (units*/mg)	Fold purification
Serum	1.69	1
Heparin Sepharose	14.92	8.8
Bio-gel AO.5m	69.96	41.4
HPLC/C4	2x10 <sup>7</sup>	1.2x10 <sup>6</sup>

\*A unit of activity is that amount of serum containing angiostatin that is capable of producing half-maximal inhibition of capillary endothelial proliferation when endothelial cells are incubated in bFGF 1 ng/ml for 72 hours.

### Example 13

*Fractionation of angiostatin from urine by column chromatography and analysis of growth-inhibitory fractions by SDS-PAGE.*

Purification of the endothelial cell inhibitor(s) from serum is hampered by the small volume of serum that can be obtained from each mouse and by the large amount of protein in the serum.

Urine from tumor bearing mice was analyzed and found that it contains an inhibitor of endothelial cell proliferation that is absent from the urine of non-tumor bearing mice and from mice with LLC-high tumors. Purification of the endothelial cell inhibitory activity was carried out by the same strategy that was employed for purification of serum (described above) (Figure 7).

Figure 7 shows C4 reverse phase chromatography of partially purified serum or urine from tumor-bearing animals. All fractions were assayed on bovine capillary endothelial cells with bFGF in a 72-hour proliferation assay as described in Example IX. A discrete peak of inhibition was seen in both cases eluting at 30 - 35 % acetonitrile in fraction 23. SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis of inhibitory fraction from the third cycle of C4 reverse phase chromatography of serum from tumor-bearing animals showed a single band at about 38,000 Daltons.

### Example 14

#### *Characterization of circulating angiostatin.*

5           Endothelial inhibition was assayed according to  
the procedure described in Example 9. Angiostatin was  
isolated on a Synchropak HPLC C4 column. (Synchrom, Inc.  
Lafayette, IN) The inhibitor was eluted at 30 to 35%  
acetonitrile gradient. On a sodium dodecyl sulfate  
polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) gel under  
10       reducing conditions ( $\beta$ -mercaptoethanol(5% v/v), the protein  
band with activity eluted at 38 kilodaltons. Under non-  
reducing conditions, the protein with activity eluted at 28  
kilodaltons. The activity is found at similar points whether the  
initial sample was isolated from urine or from serum.  
15       Activity was not detected with any other bands.

Activity associated with the bands was lost when  
heated (100°C for 10 minutes) or treated with trypsin. When  
the band with activity was extracted with a water/chloroform  
mixture (1:1), the activity was found in the aqueous phase  
20       only.

### Example 15

#### *Purification of inhibitory fragments from human plasminogen:*

25           Plasminogen lysine binding site I was obtained  
from Sigma Chemical Company. The preparation is purified  
human plasminogen after digestion with elastase. Lysine  
binding site I obtained in this manner is a population of  
peptides that contain, in aggregate, at least the first three  
triple-loop structures (numbers 1 through 3) in the plasmin A-  
30       chain (Kringle 1 +2+3). (Sottrup-Jensen, L., et al. in Progress  
in Chemical Fibrinolysis and Thrombolysis, Vol. 3, 191,  
Davidson, J.F., et al. eds. Raven Press, New York 1978 and  
Wiman, B., et al., *Biochemica et Biophysica Acta*, 579, 142  
(1979)). Plasminogen lysine binding site I (Sigma Chemical  
35       Company, St. Louis, MO) was resuspended in water and

5 applied to a C4-reversed phase column that had been  
equilibrated with HPLC-grade water/0.1% TFA. The column  
was eluted with a gradient of water/0.1% TFA to  
acetonitrile/0.1% TFA and fractions were collected into  
polypropylene tubes. An aliquot of each was evaporated in a  
speed vac, resuspended with water, and applied to BCEs in a  
proliferation assay. This procedure was repeated two times  
for the inhibitory fractions using a similar gradient for  
elution. The inhibitory activity eluted at 30-35% acetonitrile  
10 in the final run of the C4 column. SDS-PAGE of the  
inhibitory fraction revealed 3 discrete bands of apparent  
reduced molecular mass of 40, 42.5, and 45 kd. SDS-PAGE  
under non-reducing conditions revealed three bands of  
molecular mass 30, 32.5, and 35 kd respectively.

15

#### Example 16

##### *Extraction of inhibitory activity from SDS-PAGE*

Purified inhibitory fractions from human  
plasminogen based purifications were resolved by SDS-PAGE  
20 under non-denaturing conditions. Areas of the gel  
corresponding to bands seen in neighboring lanes loaded with  
the same samples by silver staining were cut from the gel and  
incubated in 1 ml of phosphate buffered saline at 4°C for 12  
hours in polypropylene tubes. The supernatant was removed  
25 and dialyzed twice against saline for 6 hours (MWCO = 6-  
8000) and twice against distilled water for 6 hours. The  
dialysate was evaporated by vacuum centrifugation. The  
product was resuspended in saline and applied to bovine  
capillary endothelial cells stimulated by 1 ng/ml basic  
30 fibroblast growth factor in a 72 hour assay. Protein extracted  
from each of the three bands inhibited the capillary endothelial  
cells.

### Example 17

#### *Plasminogen Fragment Treatment Studies*

Mice were implanted with Lewis lung carcinomas and underwent resections when the tumors were 1500-2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. On the day of operation, mice were randomized into 6 groups of 6 mice each. The mice received daily intraperitoneal injections with the three purified inhibitory fragments of human plasminogen, whole human plasminogen, urine from tumor-bearing animals, urine from normal mice, or saline. One group of tumor-bearing animals that had only a sham procedure was treated with saline injections. Immediately after removal of the primary tumor, the mice receive an intraperitoneal injection of 24 µg (1.2 mg/kg/day/mouse) of the inhibitory plasminogen fragments as a loading dose. They then receive a daily intraperitoneal injections of 12 µg of the inhibitory fragment (0.6 mg/kg/day/mouse) for the duration of the experiment. Control mice receive the same dose of the whole plasminogen molecule after tumor removal. For the urine treatments, the urine of normal or tumor bearing mice is filtered, dialyzed extensively, lyophilized, and then resuspended in sterile water to obtain a 250 fold concentration. The mice are given 0.8 ml of the dialyzed urine concentrate, either from tumor bearing mice or normal mice, in two intraperitoneal injections on the day of removal of the primary tumor as a loading dose. They then receive daily intraperitoneal injections of 0.4 ml of the dialyzed and concentrated urine for the course of the experiment. Treatments were continued for 13 days at which point all mice were sacrificed and autopsied.

The results of the experiment are shown in Figures 8 and 9. Figure 8 shows surface lung metastases after the 13 day treatment. Surface lung metastases refers to the number of metastases seen in the lungs of the mice at autopsy. A stereomicroscope was used to count the metastases. Figure 8 shows the mean number of surface lung metastases that was

5 applied to a C4-reversed phase column that had been  
equilibrated with HPLC-grade water/0.1% TFA. The column  
was eluted with a gradient of water/0.1% TFA to  
acetonitrile/0.1% TFA and fractions were collected into  
polypropylene tubes. An aliquot of each was evaporated in a  
speed vac, resuspended with water, and applied to BCEs in a  
proliferation assay. This procedure was repeated two times  
for the inhibitory fractions using a similar gradient for  
10 elution. The inhibitory activity eluted at 30-35% acetonitrile  
in the final run of the C4 column. SDS-PAGE of the  
inhibitory fraction revealed 3 discrete bands of apparent  
reduced molecular mass of 40, 42.5, and 45 kd. SDS-PAGE  
under non-reducing conditions revealed three bands of  
molecular mass 30, 32.5, and 35 kd respectively.

15

#### Example 16

##### *Extraction of inhibitory activity from SDS-PAGE*

Purified inhibitory fractions from human  
plasminogen based purifications were resolved by SDS-PAGE  
20 under non-denaturing conditions. Areas of the gel  
corresponding to bands seen in neighboring lanes loaded with  
the same samples by silver staining were cut from the gel and  
incubated in 1 ml of phosphate buffered saline at 4°C for 12  
hours in polypropylene tubes. The supernatant was removed  
25 and dialyzed twice against saline for 6 hours (MWCO = 6-  
8000) and twice against distilled water for 6 hours. The  
dialysate was evaporated by vacuum centrifugation. The  
product was resuspended in saline and applied to bovine  
capillary endothelial cells stimulated by 1 ng/ml basic  
30 fibroblast growth factor in a 72 hour assay. Protein extracted  
from each of the three bands inhibited the capillary endothelial  
cells.

**Example 17***Plasminogen Fragment Treatment Studies*

Mice were implanted with Lewis lung carcinomas and underwent resections when the tumors were 1500-2000 mm<sup>3</sup>. On the day of operation, mice were randomized into 6 groups of 6 mice each. The mice received daily intraperitoneal injections with the three purified inhibitory fragments of human plasminogen, whole human plasminogen, urine from tumor-bearing animals, urine from normal mice, or saline. One group of tumor-bearing animals that had only a sham procedure was treated with saline injections. Immediately after removal of the primary tumor, the mice receive an intraperitoneal injection of 24 µg (1.2 mg/kg/day/mouse) of the inhibitory plasminogen fragments as a loading dose. They then receive a daily intraperitoneal injections of 12 µg of the inhibitory fragment (0.6 mg/kg/day/mouse) for the duration of the experiment. Control mice receive the same dose of the whole plasminogen molecule after tumor removal. For the urine treatments, the urine of normal or tumor bearing mice is filtered, dialyzed extensively, lyophilized, and then resuspended in sterile water to obtain a 250 fold concentration. The mice are given 0.8 ml of the dialyzed urine concentrate, either from tumor bearing mice or normal mice, in two intraperitoneal injections on the day of removal of the primary tumor as a loading dose. They then receive daily intraperitoneal injections of 0.4 ml of the dialyzed and concentrated urine for the course of the experiment. Treatments were continued for 13 days at which point all mice were sacrificed and autopsied.

The results of the experiment are shown in Figures 8 and 9. Figure 8 shows surface lung metastases after the 13 day treatment. Surface lung metastases refers to the number of metastases seen in the lungs of the mice at autopsy. A stereomicroscope was used to count the metastases. Figure 8 shows the mean number of surface lung metastases that was



counted and the standard error of the mean. As shown, the group of mice with the primary tumor present showed no metastases. The mice in which the primary tumor was resected and were treated with saline showed extensive metastases. The mice treated with the human derived plasminogen fragment showed no metastases. The mice treated with whole plasminogen showed extensive metastases indicating that the whole plasminogen molecule has no endothelial inhibitory activity. Those mice treated with dialyzed and concentrated urine from tumor bearing mice showed no metastases. Mice treated with concentrated urine from normal mice showed extensive metastases. When the weight of the lung was measured, similar results were obtained (Figure 9).

#### Example 18

##### *Amino acid sequence of murine and human angiostatin.*

The amino acid sequence of angiostatin isolated from mouse urine and angiostatin isolated from the human lysine binding site I fragment preparation was determined on an Applied Biosystem Model 477A protein sequencer. Phenylthiohydantoin amino acid fractions were identified with an on-line ABI Model 120A HPLC. The amino acid sequence determined from the N-terminal sequence and the tryptic digests of the murine and human angiostatin indicate that the sequence of the angiostatin is similar to the sequence beginning at amino acid number 98 of murine plasminogen. Thus, the amino acid sequence of the angiostatin is a molecule comprising a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of an intact murine plasminogen molecule. The beginning amino acid sequence of the murine angiostatin (SEQ ID NO:2) is

shown in Figure 1. The length of the amino acid sequence may be slightly longer or shorter than that shown in the Figure 1.

5 N terminal amino acid analysis and tryptic digests of the active fraction of human lysine binding site I (See Example 15) show that the sequence of the fraction begins at approximately amino acid 97 or 99 of human plasminogen and the human angiostatin is homologous with the murine angiostatin. The beginning amino acid sequence of the human  
10 angiostatin (starting at amino acid 98) is shown in Figure 2, (SEQ ID NO:3). The amino acid sequence of murine and human angiostatin is compared in Figure 2 to corresponding internal amino acid sequences from plasminogen of other species including porcine, bovine, and Rhesus monkey  
15 plasminogen, indicating the presence of angiostatin in those species.

### Example 19

#### *Expression of human angiostatin in E. coli.*

20 The pTrcHisA vector (Invitrogen) (Fig. 10) was used to obtain high-level, regulated transcription from the trc promoter for enhanced translation efficiency of eukaryotic genes in *E. coli*. Angiostatin is expressed fused to an N-terminal nickel-binding poly-histidine tail for one-step  
25 purification using metal affinity resins. The enterokinase cleavage recognition site in the fusion peptide allows for subsequent removal of the N-terminal histidine fusion peptide from the purified recombinant protein. The recombinant human angiostatin protein was found to bind lysine; is cross-  
30 reactive with monoclonal antibodies specific for kringle regions 1, 2 and 3, and inhibits bFGF-driven endothelial cell proliferation *in vitro*.

To construct the insert, the gene fragment encoding human angiostatin is obtained from human liver mRNA which  
35 is reverse transcribed and amplified using the polymerase

counted and the standard error of the mean. As shown, the group of mice with the primary tumor present showed no metastases. The mice in which the primary tumor was resected and were treated with saline showed extensive metastases. The mice treated with the human derived plasminogen fragment showed no metastases. The mice treated with whole plasminogen showed extensive metastases indicating that the whole plasminogen molecule has no endothelial inhibitory activity. Those mice treated with dialyzed and concentrated urine from tumor bearing mice showed no metastases. Mice treated with concentrated urine from normal mice showed extensive metastases. When the weight of the lung was measured, similar results were obtained (Figure 9).

#### Example 18

##### *Amino acid sequence of murine and human angiostatin.*

The amino acid sequence of angiostatin isolated from mouse urine and angiostatin isolated from the human lysine binding site I fragment preparation was determined on an Applied Biosystem Model 477A protein sequencer. Phenylthiohydantoin amino acid fractions were identified with an on-line ABI Model 120A HPLC. The amino acid sequence determined from the N-terminal sequence and the tryptic digests of the murine and human angiostatin indicate that the sequence of the angiostatin is similar to the sequence beginning at amino acid number 98 of murine plasminogen. Thus, the amino acid sequence of the angiostatin is a molecule comprising a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of an intact murine plasminogen molecule. The beginning amino acid sequence of the murine angiostatin (SEQ ID NO:2) is

shown in Figure 1. The length of the amino acid sequence may be slightly longer or shorter than that shown in the Figure 1.

5 N terminal amino acid analysis and tryptic digests of the active fraction of human lysine binding site I (See Example 15) show that the sequence of the fraction begins at approximately amino acid 97 or 99 of human plasminogen and the human angiostatin is homologous with the murine angiostatin. The beginning amino acid sequence of the human  
10 angiostatin (starting at amino acid 98) is shown in Figure 2, (SEQ ID NO:3). The amino acid sequence of murine and human angiostatin is compared in Figure 2 to corresponding internal amino acid sequences from plasminogen of other species including porcine, bovine, and Rhesus monkey  
15 plasminogen, indicating the presence of angiostatin in those species.

### Example 19

#### *Expression of human angiostatin in E. coli.*

20 The pTrcHisA vector (Invitrogen) (Fig. 10) was used to obtain high-level, regulated transcription from the trc promoter for enhanced translation efficiency of eukaryotic genes in *E. coli*. Angiostatin is expressed fused to an N-terminal nickel-binding poly-histidine tail for one-step  
25 purification using metal affinity resins. The enterokinase cleavage recognition site in the fusion peptide allows for subsequent removal of the N-terminal histidine fusion peptide from the purified recombinant protein. The recombinant human angiostatin protein was found to bind lysine; is cross-reactive with monoclonal antibodies specific for kringle  
30 regions 1, 2 and 3, and inhibits bFGF-driven endothelial cell proliferation *in vitro*.

To construct the insert, the gene fragment encoding human angiostatin is obtained from human liver mRNA which  
35 is reverse transcribed and amplified using the polymerase

chain reaction (PCR) and specific primers. The product of 1131 base pairs encodes amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen. The amplified fragment was cloned into the XhoI/KpnI site of pTrcHisA, and the resultant construct transformed into XL-1B (available from Stratagene) *E. coli* host cells. A control clone containing the plasmid vector pTrcHisA alone was transformed into XL-1B *E. coli* host cells as well. This clone is referred to as the vector control clone. Both clones were purified identically as described below.

Expressing colonies were selected in the following manner. Colony lifts of *E. coli* transformed with the gene encoding angiostatin were grown on IPTG impregnated nitrocellulose filters and overlaid on an LB agar plate. Following IPTG induction of expression, colonies were lysed on nitrocellulose filters. The nitrocellulose lifts were blocked, rinsed and probed with two separate monoclonal antibodies (mAbs Dcd and Vap; gift of S.G. McCance and F.J. Castellino, University of Notre Dame) which recognize specific conformations of angiostatin. Strongly expressing colonies recognized by the mAbs were selected.

To identify the optimal time for maximal expression, cells were collected at various times before and after IPTG induction and exposed to repeated freeze-thaw cycles, followed by analysis with SDS-PAGE, immunoblotting and probing with mAbs Dcd and Vap.

From these, clone pTrcHisA/HAsH4 was selected. Induction with IPTG was for 4 hours after which the cell pellet was collected and resuspended in 50 mM Tris pH 8.0, 2 mM EDTA, 5% glycerol and 200 mg/ml lysozyme and stirred for 30 min. at 4°C. The slurry was centrifuged at 14,000 rpm for 25 min. and the pellet resuspended in 50 mM Tris pH 8.0, 2 mM EDTA, 5% glycerol and 0.1% DOC. This suspension was stirred for 1 hr. at 4°C, and then centrifuged at 14,000 rpm for 25 min. The supernatant fraction at this step contains expressed angiostatin. The *E. coli* expressed human angiostatin

was found to possess the physical property of native angiostatin, that is the ability to bind lysine. The *E. coli* expressed angiostatin was thus purified over a lysine-sepharose (Pharmacia or Sigma) column in a single step. Elution of  
5 angiostatin from the column was with 0.2M epsilon-amino-n-caproic acid pH7.5.

Subsequent to these experiments, scale-up 10 L fermentation batches of clone pTrcHisA/HAsH4 was performed. The cells obtained from this scaled-up induction  
10 were pelleted and resuspended in 50 mM Tris pH7.5, cracked at 10,000 psi thrice chilling at 10 °C in-between passes. The lysate obtained was clarified by centrifugation at 10,000 rpm for 30 min at 4°C, and expressed angiostatin isolated over lysine-sepharose (Fig. 11).

Purified *E. coli* expressed human angiostatin was dialysed exhaustively against water and lyophilized. The  
15 expressed human angiostatin was resuspended in media (DMEM, 5% BCS, 1% Gentamycin/ penicillin/streptomycin) to an estimated concentration of 3 ug/ml, and used in bovine capillary endothelial (BCE) cell assays *in vitro*, as described in  
20 EXAMPLE 8, pg.39. Similarly, the control clone containing the vector alone was treated in the identical fashion as the clone pTrcHisA/HAsH4. It was induced with IPTG identically, and the bacterial lysate used to bind lysine, eluted with 0.2 M  
25 amino caproic acid, dialysed exhaustively and lyophilized. This control preparation was resuspended in media also at an estimated concentration of 3 ug/ml. The samples of recombinant angiostatin, and controls were obtained from different induction and fermentation batches as well as separate  
30 purification runs, and were all coded at EntreMed, Maryland. BCE assays were performed with these coded samples in a blinded fashion at Children's Hospital, Boston.

The results of BCE assays of recombinant human angiostatin showed that human angiostatin expressed in *E. coli*  
35 inhibited the proliferation of BCE cells due to bFGF (used at 1

chain reaction (PCR) and specific primers. The product of 1131 base pairs encodes amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen. The amplified fragment was cloned into the XhoI/KpnI site of pTrcHisA, and the resultant construct transformed into XL-1B (available from Stratagene) *E. coli* host cells. A control clone containing the plasmid vector pTrcHisA alone was transformed into XL-1B *E. coli* host cells as well. This clone is referred to as the vector control clone. Both clones were purified identically as described below.

Expressing colonies were selected in the following manner. Colony lifts of *E. coli* transformed with the gene encoding angiostatin were grown on IPTG impregnated nitrocellulose filters and overlaid on an LB agar plate. Following IPTG induction of expression, colonies were lysed on nitrocellulose filters. The nitrocellulose lifts were blocked, rinsed and probed with two separate monoclonal antibodies (mAbs Dcd and Vap; gift of S.G. McCance and F.J. Castellino, University of Notre Dame) which recognize specific conformations of angiostatin. Strongly expressing colonies recognized by the mAbs were selected.

To identify the optimal time for maximal expression, cells were collected at various times before and after IPTG induction and exposed to repeated freeze-thaw cycles, followed by analysis with SDS-PAGE, immunoblotting and probing with mAbs Dcd and Vap.

From these, clone pTrcHisA/HAsH4 was selected. Induction with IPTG was for 4 hours after which the cell pellet was collected and resuspended in 50 mM Tris pH 8.0, 2 mM EDTA, 5% glycerol and 200 mg/ml lysozyme and stirred for 30 min. at 4°C. The slurry was centrifuged at 14,000 rpm for 25 min. and the pellet resuspended in 50 mM Tris pH 8.0, 2 mM EDTA, 5% glycerol and 0.1% DOC. This suspension was stirred for 1 hr. at 4°C, and then centrifuged at 14,000 rpm for 25 min. The supernatant fraction at this step contains expressed angiostatin. The *E. coli* expressed human angiostatin

was found to possess the physical property of native angiostatin, that is the ability to bind lysine. The *E. coli* expressed angiostatin was thus purified over a lysine-sepharose (Pharmacia or Sigma) column in a single step. Elution of  
5 angiostatin from the column was with 0.2M epsilon-amino-n-caproic acid pH7.5.

Subsequent to these experiments, scale-up 10 L fermentation batches of clone pTrcHisA/HAsH4 was performed. The cells obtained from this scaled-up induction  
10 were pelleted and resuspended in 50 mM Tris pH7.5, cracked at 10,000 psi thrice chilling at 10 °C in-between passes. The lysate obtained was clarified by centrifugation at 10,000 rpm for 30 min at 4°C, and expressed angiostatin isolated over lysine-sepharose (Fig. 11).

Purified *E. coli* expressed human angiostatin was dialysed exhaustively against water and lyophilized. The  
15 expressed human angiostatin was resuspended in media (DMEM, 5% BCS, 1% Gentamycin/ penicillin/streptomycin) to an estimated concentration of 3 ug/ml, and used in bovine capillary endothelial (BCE) cell assays *in vitro*, as described in  
20 EXAMPLE 8, pg.39. Similarly, the control clone containing the vector alone was treated in the identical fashion as the clone pTrcHisA/HAsH4. It was induced with IPTG identically, and the bacterial lysate used to bind lysine, eluted with 0.2 M  
25 amino caproic acid, dialysed exhaustively and lyophilized. This control preparation was resuspended in media also at an estimated concentration of 3 ug/ml. The samples of recombinant angiostatin, and controls were obtained from  
30 different induction and fermentation batches as well as separate purification runs, and were all coded at EntreMed, Maryland. BCE assays were performed with these coded samples in a blinded fashion at Children's Hospital, Boston.

The results of BCE assays of recombinant human angiostatin showed that human angiostatin expressed in *E. coli*  
35 inhibited the proliferation of BCE cells due to bFGF (used at 1



ng/ml) (Fig. 12). The stock recombinant angiostatin in media (at about 3 ug/ml) was used at a 1:5, 1:10 and 1:20 dilution. Percent inhibition was calculated as follows:

$$1 - \frac{\text{number of cells with angiostatin} - \text{number of cells at day 0}}{\text{number of cells with bFGF alone} - \text{number of cells at day 0}}$$

The percent inhibition of BCE cell proliferation was comparable or higher to that of plasminogen derived angiostatin at similar concentrations. The results from a repeat run of the BCE assay are depicted in Fig.13, where at a 1:5 dilution of the stock, recombinant angiostatin gave similar percent inhibitions to those obtained with plasminogen derived angiostatin. Figure 13 shows the surprising result that human recombinant angiostatin protein inhibits over 60%, and as much as over 75% of BCE proliferation in culture.

#### Example 20

*Angiostatin maintains dormancy of micrometastases by increasing the rate of apoptosis.*

Following subcutaneous inoculation of C57 BL6/J mice with Lewis lung carcinoma cells ( $1 \times 10^6$ ), primary tumors of approximately  $1.5 \text{ cm}^3$  developed. Animals were subject to either surgical removal of the primary tumor or sham surgery. At 5, 10 and 15 days after surgery, mice were sacrificed and their lungs prepared for histological examination. Animals with resected primary tumors showed massive proliferation of micrometastases compared to sham operated controls (Fig. 14). These changes were accompanied by a significant increase in lung weight.

Analysis of tumor cell proliferation, as measured by uptake of bromo-deoxyuridine (BrdU) showed no differences between animals with intact primary tumors or resected

tumors at 5, 9 and 13 days, indicating that the increase in tumor mass could not be explained by increased proliferation (Fig. 15). Accordingly, cell death was examined in these animals. Apoptosis, a process of cell death that is dependent on changes in gene expression and accounts for elimination of cells during development and in rapidly proliferating tissues such as the small intestine, was examined by immunohistochemically labeling fragmented DNA with the terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) technique. The apoptotic index was determined at each time of sacrifice. The removal of primary tumors caused a statistically significant increase (approximately 3 to 4 fold) in the apoptotic index at all times examined (Fig. 15).

Supporting evidence was obtained by treating mice with removed primary tumors with an exogenous suppressor of angiogenesis. This substance, TNP-1470 (O-chloroacetylcarbonyl fumagillol, previously named AGM-1470), is an analogue of fumagillin with reported anti-angiogenic activity. Subcutaneous injection of TNP-1470 (30 mg/kg every two days) produced results that were strikingly similar to those described above for animals that had intact primary tumors. These animals displayed a lower lung weight, equivalent proliferative index and increased apoptotic index compared to saline-injected controls (Fig. 16).

These data indicate that metastases remain dormant when tumor cell proliferation is balanced by an equivalent rate of cell death. The removal of the primary tumor causes a rapid increase in the growth of metastases, probably due to the removal of angiogenesis inhibitors (angiostatin) which control metastatic growth by increasing apoptosis in tumor cells. These effects are similar to those seen following removal of primary tumors and administration of an exogenous inhibitor of angiogenesis. Taken together, these data suggest that the primary tumor releases angiostatin which maintains dormancy of micrometastases.

ng/ml) (Fig. 12). The stock recombinant angiostatin in media (at about 3 ug/ml) was used at a 1:5, 1:10 and 1:20 dilution. Percent inhibition was calculated as follows:

$$1 - \frac{\text{number of cells with angiostatin} - \text{number of cells at day 0}}{\text{number of cells with bFGF alone} - \text{number of cells at day 0}}$$

The percent inhibition of BCE cell proliferation was comparable or higher to that of plasminogen derived angiostatin at similar concentrations. The results from a repeat run of the BCE assay are depicted in Fig.13, where at a 1:5 dilution of the stock, recombinant angiostatin gave similar percent inhibitions to those obtained with plasminogen derived angiostatin. Figure 13 shows the surprising result that human recombinant angiostatin protein inhibits over 60%, and as much as over 75% of BCE proliferation in culture.

20

#### Example 20

*Angiostatin maintains dormancy of micrometastases by increasing the rate of apoptosis.*

Following subcutaneous inoculation of C57 BL6/J mice with Lewis lung carcinoma cells ( $1 \times 10^6$ ), primary tumors of approximately  $1.5 \text{ cm}^3$  developed. Animals were subject to either surgical removal of the primary tumor or sham surgery. At 5, 10 and 15 days after surgery, mice were sacrificed and their lungs prepared for histological examination. Animals with resected primary tumors showed massive proliferation of micrometastases compared to sham operated controls (Fig. 14). These changes were accompanied by a significant increase in lung weight.

Analysis of tumor cell proliferation, as measured by uptake of bromo-deoxyuridine (BrdU) showed no differences between animals with intact primary tumors or resected

5 tumors at 5, 9 and 13 days, indicating that the increase in  
tumor mass could not be explained by increased proliferation  
(Fig. 15). Accordingly, cell death was examined in these  
animals. Apoptosis, a process of cell death that is dependent  
on changes in gene expression and accounts for elimination of  
cells during development and in rapidly proliferating tissues  
such as the small intestine, was examined by  
immunohistochemically labeling fragmented DNA with the  
terminal deoxynucleotidyl transferase (TdT) technique. The  
10 apoptotic index was determined at each time of sacrifice. The  
removal of primary tumors caused a statistically significant  
increase (approximately 3 to 4 fold) in the apoptotic index at  
all times examined (Fig. 15).

Supporting evidence was obtained by treating mice with  
15 removed primary tumors with an exogenous suppressor of  
angiogenesis. This substance, TNP-1470 (O-  
chloroacetylcarbamoyl fumagillol, previously named AGM-  
1470), is an analogue of fumagillin with reported anti-  
angiogenic activity. Subcutaneous injection of TNP-1470 (30  
20 mg/kg every two days) produced results that were strikingly  
similar to those described above for animals that had intact  
primary tumors. These animals displayed a lower lung weight,  
equivalent proliferative index and increased apoptotic index  
compared to saline-injected controls (Fig. 16).

25 These data indicate that metastases remain dormant when  
tumor cell proliferation is balanced by an equivalent rate of  
cell death. The removal of the primary tumor causes a rapid  
increase in the growth of metastases, probably due to the  
removal of angiogenesis inhibitors (angiostatin) which control  
30 metastatic growth by increasing apoptosis in tumor cells. These  
effects are similar to those seen following removal of primary  
tumors and administration of an exogenous inhibitor of  
angiogenesis. Taken together, these data suggest that the  
primary tumor releases angiostatin which maintains dormancy  
35 of micrometastases.

### Example 21

#### *Treatment of primary tumors with angiostatin in vivo.*

Angiostatin was purified from human plasminogen by limited elastase digestion as described in Example 15 above. Angiostatin was resuspended in phosphate-buffered saline for administration into six week old male C57BI6/J mice. Animals were implanted subcutaneously with  $1 \times 10^6$  tumor cells of either the Lewis lung carcinoma or T241 fibrosarcoma. Treatment with angiostatin is begun after four days when tumors are 80-160 mm<sup>3</sup> in size. Mice received angiostatin injections in either a single injection of 40 mg/kg or two 80 mg/kg injections via intraperitoneal (ip) or subcutaneous (sc) routes. Animals were sacrificed at various times after treatment extending to 19 days.

Angiostatin, administered at a daily dose of 40 mg/kg ip, produced a highly significant inhibition of the growth of T241 primary tumors (Fig. 17). This inhibitory effect on growth was visibly evident within 2 days and increased in magnitude throughout the time course of the study. By day 18, angiostatin-treated mice had tumors that were approximately 38% of the volume of the saline injected controls. This difference was statistically significant ( $p < 0.001$ , Students t-test).

Angiostatin treatment (total dose of 80 mg/kg/day, administered twice daily at 40 mg/kg ip or sc) also significantly reduced the growth rate of LLC-LM primary tumors (Fig. 17). This inhibitory effect was evident at 4 days and increased in magnitude at all subsequent times examined. On the last day of the experiment (day 19), angiostatin-treated mice possessed a mean tumor volume that was only 20% of the saline-injected controls which was significantly different ( $p < 0.001$  Students t-test).

In another series of experiments angiostatin was administered (50 mg/kg q12h) to mice implanted with T241

fibrosarcoma, Lewis lung carcinoma (LM) or reticulum cell sarcoma cells. For each tumor cell type, the mice receiving angiostatin had substantially reduced tumor size. Figure 19 demonstrates that for T241 fibrosarcoma, the angiostatin treated mice had mean tumor volumes that were only 15% of the untreated mice at day 24. Figure 20 demonstrates that for Lewis lung carcinoma (LM), the angiostatin treated mice had mean tumor volumes that were only 13% of the untreated mice at day 24. Figure 21 demonstrates that for reticulum sacroma, the angiostatin treated mice had mean tumor volumes that were only 19% of the untreated mice at day 24. The data represent the average of 4 mice at each time point.

These results demonstrate that angiostatin is an extremely potent inhibitor of the growth of three different primary tumors *in vivo*.

### Example 22

*Treatment of human cell-derived primary tumors in mice with angiostatin in vivo.*

The effect of angiostatin on two human tumor cell lines, human prostate carcinoma PC-3 and human breast carcinoma MDA-MB, was studied. Immunodeficient SCID mice were implanted with human tumor cells, and the mice treated with 50 mg/kg angiostatin every 12 hours essentially as described in Example 21. The results demonstrate that the angiostatin protein of the present invention is a potent inhibitor of human tumor cell growth. Figure 22 shows that for human prostate carcinoma PC-3, the angiostatin treated mice had only 2% of the mean tumor volume compared to the untreated control mice at day 24. Figure 23 shows that for human breast carcinoma MDA-MB, the angiostatin treated mice had only 8% of the mean tumor volume compared to the untreated control mice at day 24.

### Example 21

#### *Treatment of primary tumors with angiostatin in vivo.*

Angiostatin was purified from human plasminogen by limited elastase digestion as described in Example 15 above. Angiostatin was resuspended in phosphate-buffered saline for administration into six week old male C57BI6/J mice. Animals were implanted subcutaneously with  $1 \times 10^6$  tumor cells of either the Lewis lung carcinoma or T241 fibrosarcoma. Treatment with angiostatin is begun after four days when tumors are 80-160 mm<sup>3</sup> in size. Mice received angiostatin injections in either a single injection of 40 mg/kg or two 80 mg/kg injections via intraperitoneal (ip) or subcutaneous (sc) routes. Animals were sacrificed at various times after treatment extending to 19 days.

Angiostatin, administered at a daily dose of 40 mg/kg ip, produced a highly significant inhibition of the growth of T241 primary tumors (Fig. 17). This inhibitory effect on growth was visibly evident within 2 days and increased in magnitude throughout the time course of the study. By day 18, angiostatin-treated mice had tumors that were approximately 38% of the volume of the saline injected controls. This difference was statistically significant ( $p < 0.001$ , Students t-test).

Angiostatin treatment (total dose of 80 mg/kg/day, administered twice daily at 40 mg/kg ip or sc) also significantly reduced the growth rate of LLC-LM primary tumors (Fig. 17). This inhibitory effect was evident at 4 days and increased in magnitude at all subsequent times examined. On the last day of the experiment (day 19), angiostatin-treated mice possessed a mean tumor volume that was only 20% of the saline-injected controls which was significantly different ( $p < 0.001$  Students t-test).

In another series of experiments angiostatin was administered (50 mg/kg q12h) to mice implanted with T241

fibrosarcoma, Lewis lung carcinoma (LM) or reticulum cell sarcoma cells. For each tumor cell type, the mice receiving angiostatin had substantially reduced tumor size. Figure 19 demonstrates that for T241 fibrosarcoma, the angiostatin treated mice had mean tumor volumes that were only 15% of the untreated mice at day 24. Figure 20 demonstrates that for Lewis lung carcinoma (LM), the angiostatin treated mice had mean tumor volumes that were only 13% of the untreated mice at day 24. Figure 21 demonstrates that for reticulum sarcoma, the angiostatin treated mice had mean tumor volumes that were only 19% of the untreated mice at day 24. The data represent the average of 4 mice at each time point.

These results demonstrate that angiostatin is an extremely potent inhibitor of the growth of three different primary tumors *in vivo*.

#### Example 22

*Treatment of human cell-derived primary tumors in mice with angiostatin in vivo.*

The effect of angiostatin on two human tumor cell lines, human prostate carcinoma PC-3 and human breast carcinoma MDA-MB, was studied. Immunodeficient SCID mice were implanted with human tumor cells, and the mice treated with 50 mg/kg angiostatin every 12 hours essentially as described in Example 21. The results demonstrate that the angiostatin protein of the present invention is a potent inhibitor of human tumor cell growth. Figure 22 shows that for human prostate carcinoma PC-3, the angiostatin treated mice had only 2% of the mean tumor volume compared to the untreated control mice at day 24. Figure 23 shows that for human breast carcinoma MDA-MB, the angiostatin treated mice had only 8% of the mean tumor volume compared to the untreated control mice at day 24.



### Example 23

#### *Gene Therapy - Effect of transfection of the angiostatin gene on tumor volume.*

5 A 1380 base pair DNA sequence for angiostatin derived from mouse plasminogen cDNA (obtained from American Type Culture Collection (ATCC)), coding for mouse plasminogen amino acids 1 - 460, was generated using PCR and inserted into an expression vector. The expression vector was transfected into T241 fibrosarcoma cells and the transfected cells were implanted into mice. Control mice received either non-transfected T241 cells, or T241 cells transfected with the vector only (i.e. non-angiostatin expressing transfected cells). Three angiostatin-expressing transfected cell clones were used in the experiment. Mean tumor volume determined over time. The results show the surprising and dramatic reduction in mean tumor volume in mice for the angiostatin-expressing cells clones as compared with the non-transfected and non-expressing control cells.

10 The mouse DNA sequence coding for mouse angiostatin protein is derived from mouse plasminogen cDNA. The mouse angiostatin encompasses mouse plasminogen kringle regions 1-4. The schematic for constructing this clone is shown in Figure 24.

15 The mouse angiostatin protein clones were transfected into T241 fibrosarcoma cells using the LIPOFECTIN™ transfection system (available from Life Technologies, Gaithersburg, MD). The LIPOFECTIN™ reagent is a 1:1 (w/w) liposome formulation of the cationic lipid N-[1-(2,3-dioleoyloxy)propyl]-n,n,n-trimethylammonium chloride (DOTMA), and dioleoyl phosphatidylethanolamine (DOPE) in membrane filtered water.

20 The procedure for transient transfection of cells is as follows:

1. T241 cells are grown in 60 cm<sup>2</sup> tissue culture dishes, seed  $\approx 1-2 \times 10^5$  cells in 2 ml of the appropriate growth medium supplemented with serum.
- 5 2. Incubate the cells at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator until the cells are 40-70% confluent. will usually take 18-24 h, but the time will vary among cell types. The T241 tumor cells confluency was approximately 70%.
- 10 3. Prepare the following solutions in 12 x 75 mm sterile tubes:  
Solution A: For each transfection, dilute 5 µg of DNA in 100 µl of serum-free OPTI-MEM I Reduced Serum Medium (available from Life Technologies) (tissue culture grade deionized water can also be used).  
15 Solution B: For each transfection, dilute 30 µg of LIPOFECTIN in 100 µl OPTI-MEM medium.
- 20 4. Combine the two solutions, mix gently, and incubate at room temperature for 10-15 min.
5. Wash cells twice with serum-free medium.
- 25 6. For each transfection, add 0.8 ml serum-free medium to each tube containing the LIPOFECTIN<sup>TM</sup> reagent-DNA complexes. Mix gently and overlay the complex onto cells.
- 30 7. Incubate the cells for approximately 12 h at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator.
- 35 8. Replace the DNA containing medium with 1 mg/ml selection medium containing serum and incubate cells at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for a total of 48-72 h.

**Example 23**

*Gene Therapy - Effect of transfection of the angiostatin gene on tumor volume.*

5 A 1380 base pair DNA sequence for angiostatin derived from mouse plasminogen cDNA (obtained from American Type Culture Collection (ATCC)), coding for mouse plasminogen amino acids 1 - 460, was generated using PCR and inserted into an expression vector. The expression vector was transfected into T241 fibrosarcoma cells and the transfected cells were implanted into mice. Control mice received either non-transfected T241 cells, or T241 cells transfected with the vector only (i.e. non-angiostatin expressing transfected cells). Three angiostatin-expressing transfected cell clones were used in the experiment. Mean tumor volume determined over time. The results show the surprising and dramatic reduction in mean tumor volume in mice for the angiostatin-expressing cells clones as compared with the non-transfected and non-expressing control cells.

10 The mouse DNA sequence coding for mouse angiostatin protein is derived from mouse plasminogen cDNA. The mouse angiostatin encompasses mouse plasminogen kringle regions 1-4. The schematic for constructing this clone is shown in Figure 24.

15 The mouse angiostatin protein clones were transfected into T241 fibrosarcoma cells using the LIPOFECTIN™ transfection system (available from Life Technologies, Gaithersburg, MD). The LIPOFECTIN™ reagent is a 1:1 (w/w) liposome formulation of the cationic lipid N-[1-(2,3-dioleoyloxy)propyl]-n,n,n-trimethylammonium chloride (DOTMA), and dioleoyl phosphatidylethanolamine (DOPE) in membrane filtered water.

20 The procedure for transient transfection of cells is as follows:

1. T241 cells are grown in 60 cm<sup>2</sup> tissue culture dishes, seed  $\approx 1-2 \times 10^5$  cells in 2 ml of the appropriate growth medium supplemented with serum.
- 5 2. Incubate the cells at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator until the cells are 40-70% confluent. will usually take 18-24 h, but the time will vary among cell types. The T241 tumor cells confluency was approximately 70%.
- 10 3. Prepare the following solutions in 12 x 75 mm sterile tubes:  
Solution A: For each transfection, dilute 5 µg of DNA in 100 µl of serum-free OPTI-MEM I Reduced Serum Medium (available from Life Technologies) (tissue culture grade deionized water can also be used).  
15 Solution B: For each transfection, dilute 30 µg of LIPOFECTIN in 100 µl OPTI-MEM medium.
- 20 4. Combine the two solutions, mix gently, and incubate at room temperature for 10-15 min.
5. Wash cells twice with serum-free medium.
- 25 6. For each transfection, add 0.8 ml serum-free medium to each tube containing the LIPOFECTIN<sup>TM</sup> reagent-DNA complexes. Mix gently and overlay the complex onto cells.
- 30 7. Incubate the cells for approximately 12 h at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator.
- 35 8. Replace the DNA containing medium with 1 mg/ml selection medium containing serum and incubate cells at 37°C in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator for a total of 48-72 h.

9. Assay cell extracts for gene activity at 48-72 h post transfection.

5 Transfected cells can be assayed for expression of angiostatin protein using angiostatin-specific antibodies. Alternatively, after about 10-14 days, G418 resistant colonies appeared in the CMV-angiostatin transfected T241 cells. Also, a number of clones were seen in the vector alone transfected clones but not in the untransfected clones. The G418 resistant clones were selected for their expression of angiostatin, using a  
10 immunofluorescence method.

15 Interestingly, the *in vitro* cell growth T241 cells and Lewis lung cells transfected with angiostatin was not inhibited or otherwise adversely affected, as shown in Figures 25 and 26.

Figure 27 depicts the results of the transfection experiment. All three of the angiostatin-expressing T241 transfected clones produced mean tumor volumes in mice that were substantially reduced relative to the tumor volume in control mice. The mean tumor volume of the mice implanted with Clone 37 was only 13% of the control, while Clone 31 and Clone 25 tumor volumes were only 21% and 34% of the control tumor volumes, respectively. These results demonstrate that the DNA sequences coding for angiostatin can be transfected into cells, that the transfected DNA sequences are capable of expressing angiostatin protein by implanted cells, and that the expressed angiostatin functions *in vivo* to reduce tumor growth.

#### 30 Example 24

##### *Localization of in vivo site of angiostatin expression*

To localize the *in vivo* site of expression of angiostatin protein, total RNA from various cell types, Lewis lung carcinoma cells (mouse), T241 fibrosarcoma (mouse),  
35 and Burkitt's lymphoma cells (human), both from fresh tumor

or cell culture after several passages were analysed to determine the presence of angiostatin transcripts. Northern analysis of samples showed an absence of any signal hybridizing with thn sequence from all samples except that of normal mouse liver RNA showing a single signal of approximately 2.4 kb corresponding to mouse plasminogen. Northern analysis of human samles show an absence of any signal hybridizing with human angiostatin sequence from all samples except that of normal human liver RNA showing a single signal of approximately 2.4 kb corresponding to human plasminogen.

Reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) analysis showed an absence of any product from all samples probed with mouse angiostatin sequences except that of the normal mouse liver. RT-PCR analysis showed an absence of any product from all human samples probed with human angiostatin sequences except that of the normal human liver (expected size of 1050 bp for mouse and 1134 bp for human).

Thus it appears that mouse angiostatin transcripts (assuming identity with amino acids 97 to 450 of mouse plasminogen) are not produced by all the above mouse samples and human angiostatin transcripts (assuming identity with amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen) are not produced by the above human samples. The positive signals obtained in normal mouse/human liver is from hybridization with plasminogen.

### Example 25

#### Expression of Angiostatin in Yeast

The gene fragment encoding amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen was cloned into the XhoI/EcoRI site of pHIL-SI(Invitrogen) which allows the secreted expression of proteins using the PHO1 secretion signal in the yeast *Pichia pastoris*. Similarly, the gene fragment encoding

9. Assay cell extracts for gene activity at 48-72 h post transfection.

5 Transfected cells can be assayed for expression of angiostatin protein using angiostatin-specific antibodies. Alternatively, after about 10-14 days, G418 resistant colonies appeared in the CMV-angiostatin transfected T241 cells. Also, a number of clones were seen in the vector alone transfected clones but not in the untransfected clones. The G418 resistant clones were selected for their expression of angiostatin, using a  
10 immunofluorescence method.

15 Interestingly, the *in vitro* cell growth T241 cells and Lewis lung cells transfected with angiostatin was not inhibited or otherwise adversely affected, as shown in Figures 25 and 26.

Figure 27 depicts the results of the transfection experiment. All three of the angiostatin-expressing T241 transfected clones produced mean tumor volumes in mice that were substantially reduced relative to the tumor volume in control mice. The mean tumor volume of the mice implanted with Clone 37 was only 13% of the control, while Clone 31 and Clone 25 tumor volumes were only 21% and 34% of the control tumor volumes, respectively. These results demonstrate that the DNA sequences coding for angiostatin can be transfected into cells, that the transfected DNA sequences are capable of expressing angiostatin protein by implanted cells, and that the expressed angiostatin functions *in vivo* to reduce tumor growth.  
20  
25

30

#### Example 24

##### *Localization of in vivo site of angiostatin expression*

To localize the *in vivo* site of expression of angiostatin protein, total RNA from various cell types, Lewis lung carcinoma cells (mouse), T241 fibrosarcoma (mouse),  
35 and Burkitt's lymphoma cells (human), both from fresh tumor

or cell culture after several passages were analysed to determine the presence of angiostatin transcripts. Northern analysis of samples showed an absence of any signal hybridizing with thn sequence from all samples except that of normal mouse liver RNA showing a single signal of approximately 2.4 kb corresponding to mouse plasminogen. Northern analysis of human samles show an absence of any signal hybridizing with human angiostatin sequence from all samples except that of normal human liver RNA showing a single signal of approximately 2.4 kb corresponding to human plasminogen.

Reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) analysis showed an absence of any product from all samples probed with mouse angiostatin sequences except that of the normal mouse liver. RT-PCR analysis showed an absence of any product from all human samples probed with human angiostatin sequences except that of the normal human liver (expected size of 1050 bp for mouse and 1134 bp for human).

Thus it appears that mouse angiostatin transcripts (assuming identity with amino acids 97 to 450 of mouse plasminogen) are not produced by all the above mouse samples and human angiostatin transcripts (assuming identity with amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen) are not produced by the above human samples. The positive signals obtained in normal mouse/human liver is from hybridization with plasminogen.

### Example 25

#### Expression of Angiostatin in Yeast

The gene fragment encoding amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen was cloned into the XhoI/EcoRI site of pHIL-SI(Invitrogen) which allows the secreted expression of proteins using the PHO1 secretion signal in the yeast *Pichia pastoris*. Similarly, the gene fragment encoding



5 amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen was cloned into the SnaBI/EcoRI site of pPIC9 (Invitrogen) which allows the secreted expression of proteins using the  $\alpha$ -factor secretion signal in the yeast *Pichia pastoris*. The expressed human angiostatin proteins in these systems will have many advantages over those expressed in *E. coli* such as protein processing, protein folding and posttranslational modification inclusive of glycosylation.

10 Expression of gene in *P. pastoris*: is described in ) Sreekrishna, K. et al. (1988) High level expression of heterologous proteins in methylotropic yeast *Pichia pastoris*. J. Basic Microbiol. 29 (4): 265-278, and Clare, J.J. et al. (1991) Production of epidermal growth factor in yeast: High-level secretion using *Pichia pastoris* strains containing multiple gene copies, Gene 105:205-212, both of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference.

### Example 26

20 *Expression of angiostatin proteins in transgenic animals and plants*

Transgenic animals such as of the bovine or porcine family are created which express the angiostatin gene transcript. The transgenic animal express angiostatin protein for example in the milk of these animals. Additionally edible transgenic plants which express the angiostatin gene transcript are constructed.

25 Constructing transgenic animals that express foreign DNA is described in Smith H. Phytochrome transgenics: functional, ecological and biotechnical applications, Semin. Cell. Biol. 1994 5(5):315-325, which is hereby incorporated herein by reference.

30 It should be understood that the foregoing relates only to preferred embodiments of the present invention, and that numerous modifications or alterations may be made

therein without departing from the spirit and the scope of the invention as set forth in the appended claims.

5 amino acids 93 to 470 of human plasminogen was cloned into the SnaBI/EcoRI site of pPIC9 (Invitrogen) which allows the secreted expression of proteins using the  $\alpha$ -factor secretion signal in the yeast *Pichia pastoris*. The expressed human angiostatin proteins in these systems will have many advantages over those expressed in *E. coli* such as protein processing, protein folding and posttranslational modification inclusive of glycosylation.

10 Expression of gene in *P. pastoris*: is described in ) Sreekrishna, K. et al. (1988) High level expression of heterologous proteins in methylotrophic yeast *Pichia pastoris*. J. Basic Microbiol. 29 (4): 265-278, and Clare, J.J. et al. (1991) Production of epidermal growth factor in yeast: High-level secretion using *Pichia pastoris* strains containing multiple  
15 gene copies, Gene 105:205-212, both of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference.

#### Example 26

20 *Expression of angiostatin proteins in transgenic animals and plants*

Transgenic animals such as of the bovine or porcine family are created which express the angiostatin gene transcript. The transgenic animal express angiostatin protein for example in the milk of these animals. Additionally edible  
25 transgenic plants which express the angiostatin gene transcript are constructed.

Constructing transgenic animals that express foreign DNA is described in Smith H. Phytochrome transgenics: functional, ecological and biotechnical applications, Semin. Cell. Biol. 1994 5(5):315-325, which is  
30 hereby incorporated herein by reference.

It should be understood that the foregoing relates only to preferred embodiments of the present invention, and that numerous modifications or alterations may be made

therein without departing from the spirit and the scope of the invention as set forth in the appended claims.

## SEQUENCE LISTING

5

## (1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

10

(i) APPLICANT: THE CHILDREN'S MEDICAL CENTER  
CORPORATION

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Angiostatin and Method of Use

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 6

15

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:

(A) ADDRESSEE: Jones & Askew

(B) STREET: 191 Peachtree Street, 37th Floor

(C) CITY: Atlanta

(D) STATE: Georgia

20

(E) COUNTRY: U.S.

(F) ZIP: 30303-1769

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:

25

(A) MEDIUM TYPE: Floppy disk

(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible

(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS

(D) SOFTWARE: PatentIn Release #1.0, Version #1.30

30

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US

(B) FILING DATE:

(C) CLASSIFICATION:

35

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/248,629

(B) FILING DATE: 26-APR-1994

40

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/326,785

(B) FILING DATE: 20-OCT-1994

45

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:

(A) NAME: Johnson, James D.

(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 31,771

(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 05213-0122

50

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:

(A) TELEPHONE: 404-818-3700

(B) TELEFAX: 404-818-3799

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 812 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS:

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Murine

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Met Asp His Lys Glu Val Ile Leu Leu Phe Leu Leu Leu Leu Lys Pro  
 1 5 10 15  
 Gly Gln Gly Asp Ser Leu Asp Gly Tyr Ile Ser Thr Gln Gly Ala Ser  
 20 25 30  
 Leu Phe Ser Leu Thr Lys Lys Gln Leu Ala Ala Gly Gly Val Ser Asp  
 35 40 45  
 Cys Leu Ala Lys Cys Glu Gly Glu Thr Asp Phe Val Cys Arg Ser Phe  
 50 55 60  
 Gln Tyr His Ser Lys Glu Gln Gln Cys Val Ile Met Ala Glu Asn Ser  
 65 70 75 80  
 Lys Thr Ser Ser Ile Ile Arg Met Arg Asp Val Ile Leu Phe Glu Lys  
 85 90 95  
 Arg Val Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Ile Gly Asn Gly Tyr Arg  
 100 105 110  
 Gly Thr Met Ser Arg Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Ala Cys Gln Lys Trp Gly  
 115 120 125  
 Ala Thr Phe Pro His Val Pro Asn Tyr Ser Pro Ser Thr His Pro Asn  
 130 135 140  
 Glu Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Gln  
 145 150 155 160  
 Gly Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Asp Lys Arg Tyr Asp Tyr Cys  
 165 170 175

## SEQUENCE LISTING

5

## (1) GENERAL INFORMATION:

10

(i) APPLICANT: THE CHILDREN'S MEDICAL CENTER  
CORPORATION

(ii) TITLE OF INVENTION: Angiostatin and Method of Use

(iii) NUMBER OF SEQUENCES: 6

15

(iv) CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS:

(A) ADDRESSEE: Jones & Askew  
(B) STREET: 191 Peachtree Street, 37th Floor  
(C) CITY: Atlanta  
(D) STATE: Georgia  
(E) COUNTRY: U.S.  
(F) ZIP: 30303-1769

20

(v) COMPUTER READABLE FORM:

(A) MEDIUM TYPE: Floppy disk  
(B) COMPUTER: IBM PC compatible  
(C) OPERATING SYSTEM: PC-DOS/MS-DOS  
(D) SOFTWARE: PatentIn Release #1.0, Version #1.30

25

(vi) CURRENT APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US  
(B) FILING DATE:  
(C) CLASSIFICATION:

30

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/248,629  
(B) FILING DATE: 26-APR-1994

35

(vii) PRIOR APPLICATION DATA:

(A) APPLICATION NUMBER: US 08/326,785  
(B) FILING DATE: 20-OCT-1994

40

(viii) ATTORNEY/AGENT INFORMATION:

(A) NAME: Johnson, James D.  
(B) REGISTRATION NUMBER: 31,771  
(C) REFERENCE/DOCKET NUMBER: 05213-0122

45

(ix) TELECOMMUNICATION INFORMATION:

(A) TELEPHONE: 404-818-3700  
(B) TELEFAX: 404-818-3799

50

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:1:

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 812 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS:

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Murine

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:1:

Met Asp His Lys Glu Val Ile Leu Leu Phe Leu Leu Leu Leu Lys Pro  
 1 5 10 15  
 Gly Gln Gly Asp Ser Leu Asp Gly Tyr Ile Ser Thr Gln Gly Ala Ser  
 20 25 30  
 Leu Phe Ser Leu Thr Lys Lys Gln Leu Ala Ala Gly Gly Val Ser Asp  
 35 40 45  
 Cys Leu Ala Lys Cys Glu Gly Glu Thr Asp Phe Val Cys Arg Ser Phe  
 50 55 60  
 Gln Tyr His Ser Lys Glu Gln Gln Cys Val Ile Met Ala Glu Asn Ser  
 65 70 75 80  
 Lys Thr Ser Ser Ile Ile Arg Met Arg Asp Val Ile Leu Phe Glu Lys  
 85 90 95  
 Arg Val Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Ile Gly Asn Gly Tyr Arg  
 100 105 110  
 Gly Thr Met Ser Arg Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Ala Cys Gln Lys Trp Gly  
 115 120 125  
 Ala Thr Phe Pro His Val Pro Asn Tyr Ser Pro Ser Thr His Pro Asn  
 130 135 140  
 Glu Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Gln  
 145 150 155 160  
 Gly Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Asp Lys Arg Tyr Asp Tyr Cys  
 165 170 175



77

Asn Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Glu Glu Cys Met Tyr Cys Ser Gly Glu Lys  
 180 185 190  
 5 Tyr Glu Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Leu Asp Cys Gln Ala  
 195 200 205  
 Trp Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ala Lys Phe  
 210 215 220  
 10 Pro Ser Lys Asn Leu Lys Met Asn Tyr Cys His Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu  
 225 230 235 240  
 Pro Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr Thr Asp Pro Thr Lys Arg Trp Glu Tyr  
 245 250 255  
 15 Cys Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr Thr Pro Pro Pro Pro Pro Ser Pro Thr  
 260 265 270  
 Tyr Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Arg Gly Glu Asn Tyr Arg Gly Thr Val Ser  
 275 280 285  
 20 Val Thr Val Ser Gly Lys Thr Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser Glu Gln Thr Pro  
 290 295 300  
 His Arg His Asn Arg Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys Lys Asn Leu Glu  
 305 310 315 320  
 Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Thr Ala Pro Trp Cys Tyr  
 325 330 335  
 30 Thr Thr Asp Ser Gln Leu Arg Trp Glu Tyr Cys Glu Ile Pro Ser Cys  
 340 345 350  
 Glu Ser Ser Ala Ser Pro Asp Gln Ser Asp Ser Ser Val Pro Pro Glu  
 355 360 365  
 35 Glu Gln Thr Pro Val Val Gln Glu Cys Tyr Gln Ser Asp Gly Gln Ser  
 370 375 380  
 Tyr Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Ile Thr Gly Lys Lys Cys Gln Ser  
 385 390 395 400  
 Trp Ala Ala Met Phe Pro His Arg His Ser Lys Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe  
 405 410 415  
 45 Pro Asp Ala Gly Leu Glu Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Asp  
 420 425 430  
 Lys Gly Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Ser Val Arg Trp Glu Tyr  
 435 440 445  
 50 Cys Asn Leu Lys Arg Cys Ser Glu Thr Gly Gly Ser Val Val Glu Leu  
 450 455 460

	Pro	Thr	Val	Ser	Gln	Glu	Pro	Ser	Gly	Pro	Ser	Asp	Ser	Glu	Thr	Asp
	465					470					475					480
5	Cys	Met	Tyr	Gly	Asn	Gly	Lys	Asp	Tyr	Arg	Gly	Lys	Thr	Ala	Val	Thr
					485					490					495	
	Ala	Ala	Gly	Thr	Pro	Cys	Gln	Gly	Trp	Ala	Ala	Gln	Glu	Pro	His	Arg
				500					505					510		
10	His	Ser	Ile	Phe	Thr	Pro	Gln	Thr	Asn	Pro	Arg	Ala	Asp	Leu	Glu	Lys
			515					520					525			
	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Gly	Asp	Val	Asn	Gly	Pro	Trp	Cys	Tyr
15		530					535					540				
	Thr	Thr	Asn	Pro	Arg	Lys	Leu	Tyr	Asp	Tyr	Cys	Asp	Ile	Pro	Leu	Cys
	545					550					555					560
20	Ala	Ser	Ala	Ser	Ser	Phe	Glu	Cys	Gly	Lys	Pro	Gln	Val	Glu	Pro	Lys
					565					570					575	
	Lys	Cys	Pro	Gly	Arg	Val	Val	Gly	Gly	Cys	Val	Ala	Asn	Pro	His	Ser
				580					585					590		
25	Trp	Pro	Trp	Gln	Ile	Ser	Leu	Arg	Thr	Arg	Phe	Thr	Gly	Gln	His	Phe
			595					600					605			
	Cys	Gly	Gly	Thr	Leu	Ile	Ala	Pro	Glu	Trp	Val	Leu	Thr	Ala	Ala	His
30		610					615					620				
	Cys	Leu	Glu	Lys	Ser	Ser	Arg	Pro	Glu	Phe	Tyr	Lys	Val	Ile	Leu	Gly
	625					630					635					640
35	Ala	His	Glu	Glu	Tyr	Ile	Arg	Gly	Leu	Asp	Val	Gln	Glu	Ile	Ser	Val
					645					650					655	
	Ala	Lys	Leu	Ile	Leu	Glu	Pro	Asn	Asn	Arg	Asp	Ile	Ala	Leu	Leu	Lys
				660					665					670		
40	Leu	Ser	Arg	Pro	Ala	Thr	Ile	Thr	Asp	Lys	Val	Ile	Pro	Ala	Cys	Leu
			675					680					685			
	Pro	Ser	Pro	Asn	Tyr	Met	Val	Ala	Asp	Arg	Thr	Ile	Cys	Tyr	Ile	Thr
45		690					695					700				
	Gly	Trp	Gly	Glu	Thr	Gln	Gly	Thr	Phe	Gly	Ala	Gly	Arg	Leu	Lys	Glu
	705					710					715					720
	Ala	Gln	Leu	Pro	Val	Ile	Glu	Asn	Lys	Val	Cys	Asn	Arg	Val	Glu	Tyr
50					725					730					735	
	Leu	Asn	Asn	Arg	Val	Lys	Ser	Thr	Glu	Leu	Cys	Ala	Gly	Gln	Leu	Ala
				740					745					750		

	Asn Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Glu Glu Cys Met Tyr Cys Ser Gly Glu Lys	
	180	185 190
5	Tyr Glu Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Leu Asp Cys Gln Ala	
	195	200 205
	Trp Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ala Lys Phe	
	210	215 220
10	Pro Ser Lys Asn Leu Lys Met Asn Tyr Cys His Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu	
	225	230 235 240
	Pro Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr Thr Asp Pro Thr Lys Arg Trp Glu Tyr	
15		245 250 255
	Cys Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr Thr Pro Pro Pro Pro Ser Pro Thr	
	260	265 270
20	Tyr Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Arg Gly Glu Asn Tyr Arg Gly Thr Val Ser	
	275	280 285
	Val Thr Val Ser Gly Lys Thr Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser Glu Gln Thr Pro	
	290	295 300
25	His Arg His Asn Arg Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys Lys Asn Leu Glu	
	305	310 315 320
	Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Thr Ala Pro Trp Cys Tyr	
30		325 330 335
	Thr Thr Asp Ser Gln Leu Arg Trp Glu Tyr Cys Glu Ile Pro Ser Cys	
	340	345 350
35	Glu Ser Ser Ala Ser Pro Asp Gln Ser Asp Ser Ser Val Pro Pro Glu	
	355	360 365
	Glu Gln Thr Pro Val Val Gln Glu Cys Tyr Gln Ser Asp Gly Gln Ser	
	370	375 380
40	Tyr Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Ile Thr Gly Lys Lys Cys Gln Ser	
	385	390 395 400
	Trp Ala Ala Met Phe Pro His Arg His Ser Lys Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe	
45		405 410 415
	Pro Asp Ala Gly Leu Glu Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Asp	
	420	425 430
50	Lys Gly Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Ser Val Arg Trp Glu Tyr	
	435	440 445
	Cys Asn Leu Lys Arg Cys Ser Glu Thr Gly Gly Ser Val Val Glu Leu	
	450	455 460

78

	Pro Thr Val Ser Gln Glu Pro Ser Gly Pro Ser Asp Ser Glu Thr Asp	465	470	475	480
5	Cys Met Tyr Gly Asn Gly Lys Asp Tyr Arg Gly Lys Thr Ala Val Thr	485	490	495	
	Ala Ala Gly Thr Pro Cys Gln Gly Trp Ala Ala Gln Glu Pro His Arg	500	505	510	
10	His Ser Ile Phe Thr Pro Gln Thr Asn Pro Arg Ala Asp Leu Glu Lys	515	520	525	
	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Asp Val Asn Gly Pro Trp Cys Tyr	530	535	540	
15	Thr Thr Asn Pro Arg Lys Leu Tyr Asp Tyr Cys Asp Ile Pro Leu Cys	545	550	555	560
	Ala Ser Ala Ser Ser Phe Glu Cys Gly Lys Pro Gln Val Glu Pro Lys	565	570	575	
20	Lys Cys Pro Gly Arg Val Val Gly Gly Cys Val Ala Asn Pro His Ser	580	585	590	
	Trp Pro Trp Gln Ile Ser Leu Arg Thr Arg Phe Thr Gly Gln His Phe	595	600	605	
	Cys Gly Gly Thr Leu Ile Ala Pro Glu Trp Val Leu Thr Ala Ala His	610	615	620	
30	Cys Leu Glu Lys Ser Ser Arg Pro Glu Phe Tyr Lys Val Ile Leu Gly	625	630	635	640
	Ala His Glu Glu Tyr Ile Arg Gly Leu Asp Val Gln Glu Ile Ser Val	645	650	655	
35	Ala Lys Leu Ile Leu Glu Pro Asn Asn Arg Asp Ile Ala Leu Leu Lys	660	665	670	
	Leu Ser Arg Pro Ala Thr Ile Thr Asp Lys Val Ile Pro Ala Cys Leu	675	680	685	
	Pro Ser Pro Asn Tyr Met Val Ala Asp Arg Thr Ile Cys Tyr Ile Thr	690	695	700	
45	Gly Trp Gly Glu Thr Gln Gly Thr Phe Gly Ala Gly Arg Leu Lys Glu	705	710	715	720
	Ala Gln Leu Pro Val Ile Glu Asn Lys Val Cys Asn Arg Val Glu Tyr	725	730	735	
50	Leu Asn Asn Arg Val Lys Ser Thr Glu Leu Cys Ala Gly Gln Leu Ala	740	745	750	

79

Gly Gly Val Asp Ser Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Cys  
           755                                  760                                  765  
 5 Phe Glu Lys Asp Lys Tyr Ile Leu Gln Gly Val Thr Ser Trp Gly Leu  
           770                                  775                                  780  
 Gly Cys Ala Arg Pro Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Val Arg Val Ser Arg  
   785                                  790                                  795                                  800  
 10 Phe Val Asp Trp Ile Glu Arg Glu Met Arg Asn Asn  
                                   805                                  810

15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 20 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

25 (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
 30 (A) ORGANISM: Murine

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

35 Val Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Ile Gly Asn Gly Tyr Arg Gly  
   1                                  5                                  10                                  15  
 Thr Met Ser Arg Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Ala Cys Gln Lys Trp Gly Ala  
                                   20                                  25                                  30  
 40 Thr Phe Pro His Val Pro Asn Tyr Ser Pro Ser Thr His Pro Asn Glu  
                                   35                                  40                                  45  
 Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Gln Gly  
 45           50                                  55                                  60  
 Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Asp Lys Arg Tyr Asp Tyr Cys Asn  
   65                                  70                                  75                                  80  
 50 Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Glu Glu Cys Met Tyr Cys Ser Gly Glu Lys Tyr  
                                   85                                  90                                  95  
 Glu Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Leu Asp Cys Gln Ala Trp  
                                   100                                  105                                  110  
 55 Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ala Lys Phe Pro  
                                   115                                  120                                  125

80

	Ser	Lys	Asn	Leu	Lys	Met	Asn	Tyr	Cys	His	Asn	Pro	Asp	Gly	Glu	Pro	
	130						135					140					
5	Arg	Pro	Trp	Cys	Phe	Thr	Thr	Asp	Pro	Thr	Lys	Arg	Trp	Glu	Tyr	Cys	
	145					150					155					160	
	Asp	Ile	Pro	Arg	Cys	Thr	Thr	Pro	Pro	Pro	Pro	Pro	Ser	Pro	Thr	Tyr	
					165						170				175		
10	Gln	Cys	Leu	Lys	Gly	Arg	Gly	Glu	Asn	Tyr	Arg	Gly	Thr	Val	Ser	Val	
				180						185				190			
	Thr	Val	Ser	Gly	Lys	Thr	Cys	Gln	Arg	Trp	Ser	Glu	Gln	Thr	Pro	His	
15			195					200					205				
	Arg	His	Asn	Arg	Thr	Pro	Glu	Asn	Phe	Pro	Cys	Lys	Asn	Leu	Glu	Glu	
	210						215					220					
20	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Gly	Glu	Thr	Ala	Pro	Trp	Cys	Tyr	Thr	
	225					230					235					240	
	Thr	Asp	Ser	Gln	Leu	Arg	Trp	Glu	Tyr	Cys	Glu	Ile	Pro	Ser	Cys	Glu	
					245					250					255		
25	Ser	Ser	Ala	Ser	Pro	Asp	Gln	Ser	Asp	Ser	Ser	Val	Pro	Pro	Glu	Glu	
				260					265					270			
	Gln	Thr	Pro	Val	Val	Gln	Glu	Cys	Tyr	Gln	Ser	Asp	Gly	Gln	Ser	Tyr	
30			275					280					285				
	Arg	Gly	Thr	Ser	Ser	Thr	Thr	Ile	Thr	Gly	Lys	Lys	Cys	Gln	Ser	Trp	
	290						295					300					
35	Ala	Ala	Met	Phe	Pro	His	Arg	His	Ser	Lys	Thr	Pro	Glu	Asn	Phe	Pro	
	305					310					315					320	
	Asp	Ala	Gly	Leu	Glu	Met	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Gly	Asp	Lys	
					325					330					335		
40	Gly	Pro	Trp														

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

45

## (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS:

50

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

## (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

55

## (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Homo sapiens

Gly Gly Val Asp Ser Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Cys  
 755 760 765  
 5 Phe Glu Lys Asp Lys Tyr Ile Leu Gln Gly Val Thr Ser Trp Gly Leu  
 770 775 780  
 Gly Cys Ala Arg Pro Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Val Arg Val Ser Arg  
 785 790 795 800  
 10 Phe Val Asp Trp Ile Glu Arg Glu Met Arg Asn Asn  
 805 810

15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:2:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear  
 20

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein  
 25

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
 (A) ORGANISM: Murine  
 30

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:2:

35 Val Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Ile Gly Asn Gly Tyr Arg Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 Thr Met Ser Arg Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Ala Cys Gln Lys Trp Gly Ala  
 20 25 30  
 40 Thr Phe Pro His Val Pro Asn Tyr Ser Pro Ser Thr His Pro Asn Glu  
 35 40 45  
 45 Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Gln Gly  
 50 55 60  
 Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Asp Lys Arg Tyr Asp Tyr Cys Asn  
 65 70 75 80  
 50 Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Glu Glu Cys Met Tyr Cys Ser Gly Glu Lys Tyr  
 85 90 95  
 Glu Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Leu Asp Cys Gln Ala Trp  
 100 105 110  
 55 Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ala Lys Phe Pro  
 115 120 125

80

Ser Lys Asn Leu Lys Met Asn Tyr Cys His Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Pro  
 130 135 140  
 5 Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr Thr Asp Pro Thr Lys Arg Trp Glu Tyr Cys  
 145 150 155 160  
 Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr Thr Pro Pro Pro Pro Pro Ser Pro Thr Tyr  
 165 170 175  
 10 Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Arg Gly Glu Asn Tyr Arg Gly Thr Val Ser Val  
 180 185 190  
 Thr Val Ser Gly Lys Thr Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser Glu Gln Thr Pro His  
 195 200 205  
 15 Arg His Asn Arg Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys Lys Asn Leu Glu Glu  
 210 215 220  
 20 Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Thr Ala Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr  
 225 230 235 240  
 Thr Asp Ser Gln Leu Arg Trp Glu Tyr Cys Glu Ile Pro Ser Cys Glu  
 245 250 255  
 25 Ser Ser Ala Ser Pro Asp Gln Ser Asp Ser Ser Val Pro Pro Glu Glu  
 260 265 270  
 Gln Thr Pro Val Val Gln Glu Cys Tyr Gln Ser Asp Gly Gln Ser Tyr  
 275 280 285  
 30 Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Ile Thr Gly Lys Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp  
 290 295 300  
 35 Ala Ala Met Phe Pro His Arg His Ser Lys Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro  
 305 310 315 320  
 Asp Ala Gly Leu Glu Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Asp Lys  
 325 330 335  
 40 Gly Pro Trp

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:3:

45

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

50

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

55

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:

(A) ORGANISM: Homo sapiens



## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

5	Val	Tyr	Leu	Ser	Glu	Cys	Lys	Thr	Gly	Asn	Gly	Lys	Asn	Tyr	Arg	Gly	1	5	10	15
	Thr	Met	Ser	Lys	Thr	Lys	Asn	Gly	Ile	Thr	Cys	Gln	Lys	Trp	Ser	Ser	20	25	30	
10	Thr	Ser	Pro	His	Arg	Pro	Arg	Phe	Ser	Pro	Ala	Thr	His	Pro	Ser	Glu	35	40	45	
	Gly	Leu	Glu	Glu	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Asn	Asp	Pro	Gln	Gly	50	55	60	
15	Pro	Trp	Cys	Tyr	Thr	Thr	Asp	Pro	Glu	Lys	Arg	Tyr	Asp	Tyr	Cys	Asp	65	70	75	80
	Ile	Leu	Glu	Cys	Glu	Glu	Glu	Cys	Met	His	Cys	Ser	Gly	Glu	Asn	Tyr	85	90	95	
20	Asp	Gly	Lys	Ile	Ser	Lys	Thr	Met	Ser	Gly	Leu	Glu	Cys	Gln	Ala	Trp	100	105	110	
	Asp	Ser	Gln	Ser	Pro	His	Ala	His	Gly	Tyr	Ile	Pro	Ser	Lys	Phe	Pro	115	120	125	
25	Asn	Lys	Asn	Leu	Lys	Lys	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Arg	Glu	Leu	130	135	140	
30	Arg	Pro	Trp	Cys	Phe	Thr	Thr	Asp	Pro	Asn	Lys	Arg	Trp	Glu	Leu	Cys	145	150	155	160
	Asp	Ile	Pro	Arg	Cys	Thr	Thr	Pro	Pro	Pro	Ser	Ser	Gly	Pro	Thr	Tyr	165	170	175	
35	Gln	Cys	Leu	Lys	Gly	Thr	Gly	Glu	Asn	Tyr	Arg	Gly	Asn	Val	Ala	Val	180	185	190	
40	Thr	Val	Ser	Gly	His	Thr	Cys	Gln	His	Trp	Ser	Ala	Gln	Thr	Pro	His	195	200	205	
	Thr	His	Asn	Arg	Thr	Pro	Glu	Asn	Phe	Pro	Cys	Lys	Asn	Leu	Asp	Glu	210	215	220	
45	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Gly	Lys	Arg	Ala	Pro	Trp	Cys	His	Thr	225	230	235	240
	Thr	Asn	Ser	Gln	Val	Arg	Trp	Glu	Tyr	Cys	Lys	Ile	Pro	Ser	Cys	Asp	245	250	255	
50	Ser	Ser	Pro	Val	Ser	Thr	Glu	Gln	Leu	Ala	Pro	Thr	Ala	Pro	Pro	Glu	260	265	270	
55	Leu	Thr	Pro	Val	Val	Gln	Asp	Cys	Tyr	His	Gly	Asp	Gly	Gln	Ser	Tyr	275	280	285	

82

Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Thr Thr Gly Lys Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp  
 290 295 300  
 Ser Ser Met Thr Pro His Arg His Gln Lys Thr Pro Glu Asn Tyr Pro  
 5 305 310 315 320  
 Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys  
 325 330 335  
 10 Gly Pro Trp  
 15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 20 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

25 (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
 30 (A) ORGANISM: Rhesus monkey

35 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Val Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Asn Gly Lys Asn Tyr Arg Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 Thr Met Ser Lys Thr Arg Thr Gly Ile Thr Cys Gln Lys Trp Ser Ser  
 40 20 25 30  
 Thr Ser Pro His Arg Pro Thr Phe Ser Pro Ala Thr His Pro Ser Glu  
 35 40 45  
 Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Gly Gln Gly  
 50 55 60  
 Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Glu Glu Arg Phe Asp Tyr Cys Asp  
 65 70 75 80  
 Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Asp Glu Cys Met His Cys Ser Gly Glu Asn Tyr  
 85 90 95  
 Asp Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Leu Glu Cys Gln Ala Trp  
 55 100 105 110  
 Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ser Lys Phe Pro  
 115 120 125

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:3:

5	Val	Tyr	Leu	Ser	Glu	Cys	Lys	Thr	Gly	Asn	Gly	Lys	Asn	Tyr	Arg	Gly	1	5	10	15
	Thr	Met	Ser	Lys	Thr	Lys	Asn	Gly	Ile	Thr	Cys	Gln	Lys	Trp	Ser	Ser	20	25	30	
10	Thr	Ser	Pro	His	Arg	Pro	Arg	Phe	Ser	Pro	Ala	Thr	His	Pro	Ser	Glu	35	40	45	
	Gly	Leu	Glu	Glu	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Asn	Asp	Pro	Gln	Gly	50	55	60	
15	Pro	Trp	Cys	Tyr	Thr	Thr	Asp	Pro	Glu	Lys	Arg	Tyr	Asp	Tyr	Cys	Asp	65	70	75	80
	Ile	Leu	Glu	Cys	Glu	Glu	Glu	Cys	Met	His	Cys	Ser	Gly	Glu	Asn	Tyr	85	90	95	
20	Asp	Gly	Lys	Ile	Ser	Lys	Thr	Met	Ser	Gly	Leu	Glu	Cys	Gln	Ala	Trp	100	105	110	
	Asp	Ser	Gln	Ser	Pro	His	Ala	His	Gly	Tyr	Ile	Pro	Ser	Lys	Phe	Pro	115	120	125	
25	Asn	Lys	Asn	Leu	Lys	Lys	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Arg	Glu	Leu	130	135	140	
30	Arg	Pro	Trp	Cys	Phe	Thr	Thr	Asp	Pro	Asn	Lys	Arg	Trp	Glu	Leu	Cys	145	150	155	160
	Asp	Ile	Pro	Arg	Cys	Thr	Thr	Pro	Pro	Pro	Ser	Ser	Gly	Pro	Thr	Tyr	165	170	175	
35	Gln	Cys	Leu	Lys	Gly	Thr	Gly	Glu	Asn	Tyr	Arg	Gly	Asn	Val	Ala	Val	180	185	190	
40	Thr	Val	Ser	Gly	His	Thr	Cys	Gln	His	Trp	Ser	Ala	Gln	Thr	Pro	His	195	200	205	
	Thr	His	Asn	Arg	Thr	Pro	Glu	Asn	Phe	Pro	Cys	Lys	Asn	Leu	Asp	Glu	210	215	220	
45	Asn	Tyr	Cys	Arg	Asn	Pro	Asp	Gly	Lys	Arg	Ala	Pro	Trp	Cys	His	Thr	225	230	235	240
	Thr	Asn	Ser	Gln	Val	Arg	Trp	Glu	Tyr	Cys	Lys	Ile	Pro	Ser	Cys	Asp	245	250	255	
50	Ser	Ser	Pro	Val	Ser	Thr	Glu	Gln	Leu	Ala	Pro	Thr	Ala	Pro	Pro	Glu	260	265	270	
55	Leu	Thr	Pro	Val	Val	Gln	Asp	Cys	Tyr	His	Gly	Asp	Gly	Gln	Ser	Tyr	275	280	285	

82

Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Thr Thr Gly Lys Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp  
 290 295 300  
 5 Ser Ser Met Thr Pro His Arg His Gln Lys Thr Pro Glu Asn Tyr Pro  
 305 310 315 320  
 Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys  
 325 330 335  
 10 Gly Pro Trp

15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:4:

20 (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

25 (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

30 (vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
 (A) ORGANISM: Rhesus monkey

35 (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:4:

Val Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Asn Gly Lys Asn Tyr Arg Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 Thr Met Ser Lys Thr Arg Thr Gly Ile Thr Cys Gln Lys Trp Ser Ser  
 20 25 30  
 Thr Ser Pro His Arg Pro Thr Phe Ser Pro Ala Thr His Pro Ser Glu  
 35 40 45  
 Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Gly Gln Gly  
 50 55 60  
 Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Glu Glu Arg Phe Asp Tyr Cys Asp  
 65 70 75 80  
 50 Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Asp Glu Cys Met His Cys Ser Gly Glu Asn Tyr  
 85 90 95  
 Asp Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Leu Glu Cys Gln Ala Trp  
 100 105 110  
 55 Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ser Lys Phe Pro  
 115 120 125

83

Asn Lys Asn Leu Lys Lys Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Pro  
 130 135 140  
 5 Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr Thr Asp Pro Asn Lys Arg Trp Glu Leu Cys  
 145 150 155 160  
 Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr Thr Pro Pro Pro Ser Ser Gly Pro Thr Tyr  
 165 170 175  
 10 Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Thr Gly Glu Asn Tyr Arg Gly Asp Val Ala Val  
 180 185 190  
 Thr Val Ser Gly His Thr Cys His Gly Trp Ser Ala Gln Thr Pro His  
 195 200 205  
 15 Thr His Asn Arg Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys Lys Asn Leu Asp Glu  
 210 215 220  
 20 Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Lys Ala Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr  
 225 230 235 240  
 Thr Asn Ser Gln Val Arg Trp Glu Tyr Cys Lys Ile Pro Ser Cys Glu  
 245 250 255  
 25 Ser Ser Pro Val Ser Thr Glu Pro Leu Asp Pro Thr Ala Pro Pro Glu  
 260 265 270  
 30 Leu Thr Pro Val Val Gln Glu Cys Tyr His Gly Asp Gly Gln Ser Tyr  
 275 280 285  
 Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Thr Thr Gly Lys Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp  
 290 295 300  
 35 Ser Ser Met Thr Pro His Trp His Glu Lys Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro  
 305 310 315 320  
 Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys  
 325 330 335  
 40 Gly Pro Trp  
 45

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

- 50 (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear  
 55 (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein  
 (iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
(A) ORGANISM: Porcine

5

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

1	Ile Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Asn Gly Lys Asn Tyr Arg Gly	15
10	Thr Thr Ser Lys Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Ile Cys Gln Lys Trp Ser Val	30
15	Ser Ser Pro His Ile Pro Lys Tyr Ser Pro Glu Lys Phe Pro Leu Ala	45
20	Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Lys Gly	60
25	Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Glu Thr Arg Phe Asp Tyr Cys Asp	80
30	Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Asp Glu Cys Met His Cys Ser Gly Glu His Tyr	95
35	Glu Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Ile Glu Cys Gln Ser Trp	110
40	Gly Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Leu Pro Ser Lys Phe Pro	125
45	Asn Lys Asn Leu Lys Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Pro	140
50	Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr Thr Asp Pro Asn Lys Arg Trp Glu Phe Cys	160
55	Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr Thr Pro Pro Pro Thr Ser Gly Pro Thr Tyr	175
	Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Arg Gly Glu Asn Tyr Arg Gly Thr Val Ser Val	190
	Thr Ala Ser Gly His Thr Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser Ala Gln Ser Pro His	205
	Lys His Asn Arg Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys Lys Asn Leu Glu Glu	220
	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Thr Ala Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr	235
	Thr Asp Ser Glu Val Arg Trp Asp Tyr Cys Lys Ile Pro Ser Cys Gly	250
	Ser Ser Thr Thr Ser Thr Glu His Leu Asp Ala Pro Val Pro Pro Glu	265
		270

[illegible]

(2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:5:

(i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:

(A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids

(B) TYPE: amino acid

(C) STRANDEDNESS:

(D) TOPOLOGY: linear

## (ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
(A) ORGANISM: Porcine

5

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:5:

10	Ile Tyr Leu Ser Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Asn Gly Lys Asn Tyr Arg Gly	1	5	10	15
	Thr Thr Ser Lys Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Ile Cys Gln Lys Trp Ser Val	20	25	30	
15	Ser Ser Pro His Ile Pro Lys Tyr Ser Pro Glu Lys Phe Pro Leu Ala	35	40	45	
	Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Lys Gly	50	55	60	
20	Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Glu Thr Arg Phe Asp Tyr Cys Asp	65	70	75	80
	Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Asp Glu Cys Met His Cys Ser Gly Glu His Tyr	85	90	95	
25	Glu Gly Lys Ile Ser Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Ile Glu Cys Gln Ser Trp	100	105	110	
	Gly Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Leu Pro Ser Lys Phe Pro	115	120	125	
30	Asn Lys Asn Leu Lys Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Pro	130	135	140	
	Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr Thr Asp Pro Asn Lys Arg Trp Glu Phe Cys	145	150	155	160
	Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr Thr Pro Pro Pro Thr Ser Gly Pro Thr Tyr	165	170	175	
40	Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Arg Gly Glu Asn Tyr Arg Gly Thr Val Ser Val	180	185	190	
	Thr Ala Ser Gly His Thr Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser Ala Gln Ser Pro His	195	200	205	
45	Lys His Asn Arg Thr Pro Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys Lys Asn Leu Glu Glu	210	215	220	
	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Thr Ala Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr	225	230	235	240
	Thr Asp Ser Glu Val Arg Trp Asp Tyr Cys Lys Ile Pro Ser Cys Gly	245	250	255	
55	Ser Ser Thr Thr Ser Thr Glu His Leu Asp Ala Pro Val Pro Pro Glu	260	265	270	



85

Gln Thr Pro Val Ala Gln Asp Cys Tyr Arg Gly Asn Gly Glu Ser Tyr  
 275 280 285  
 5 Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Ile Thr Gly Arg Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp  
 290 295 300  
 Val Ser Met Thr Pro His Arg His Glu Lys Thr Pro Gly Asn Phe Pro  
 305 310 315 320  
 10 Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys  
 325 330 335  
 Ser Pro Trp

15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

20

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
 (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
 (B) TYPE: amino acid  
 (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 25 (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

30

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
 (A) ORGANISM: Bovine

35

(xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Ile Tyr Leu Leu Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Asn Gly Gln Thr Tyr Arg Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 40 Thr Thr Ala Glu Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Thr Cys Gln Lys Trp Ser Ala  
 20 25 30  
 Thr Ser Pro His Val Pro Lys Phe Ser Pro Glu Lys Phe Pro Leu Ala  
 35 40 45  
 45 Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Asn Gly  
 50 55 60  
 Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Asp Lys Arg Tyr Asp Tyr Cys Asp  
 50 65 70 75 80  
 Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Asp Lys Cys Met His Cys Ser Gly Glu Asn Tyr  
 85 90 95  
 55 Glu Gly Lys Ile Ala Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Arg Asp Cys Gln Ala Trp  
 100 105 110  
 Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ser Lys Phe Pro

86

	115	120	125	
5	Asn Lys Asn Leu Lys Met 130	Asn Tyr Cys Arg 135	Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Pro 140	
	Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr 145	Thr Asp Pro Gln Lys 150	Arg Trp Glu Phe Cys 155	160
10	Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr 165	Thr Pro Pro Pro Ser 170	Ser Gly Pro Lys Tyr 175	
	Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Thr 180	Gly Lys Asn Tyr Gly Gly 185	Thr Val Ala Val 190	
15	Thr Glu Ser Gly His Thr 195	Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser 200	Glu Gln Thr Pro His 205	
20	Lys His Asn Arg Thr Pro 210	Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys 215	Lys Asn Leu Glu Glu 220	
	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro 225	Asp Gly Glu Lys Ala 230	Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr 235	240
25	Thr Asn Ser Glu Val Arg 245	Trp Glu Tyr Cys Thr 250	Ile Pro Ser Cys Glu 255	
	Ser Ser Pro Leu Ser Thr 260	Glu Arg Met Asp Val 265	Pro Val Pro Pro Glu 270	
30	Gln Thr Pro Val Pro Gln 275	Asp Cys Tyr His Gly 280	Asn Gly Gln Ser Tyr 285	
35	Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr 290	Thr Ile Thr Gly Arg 295	Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp 300	
	Ser Ser Met Thr Pro His 305	Arg His Leu Lys Thr 310	Pro Glu Asn Tyr Pro 315	320
40	Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met 325	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn 330	Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys 335	
	Ser Pro Trp			
45				
50				

85

Gln Thr Pro Val Ala Gln Asp Cys Tyr Arg Gly Asn Gly Glu Ser Tyr  
                   275                                  280                                  285  
 5 Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr Thr Ile Thr Gly Arg Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp  
                   290                                  295                                  300  
 Val Ser Met Thr Pro His Arg His Glu Lys Thr Pro Gly Asn Phe Pro  
 305                                                  310                                  315                                  320  
 10 Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys  
                                                   325                                  330                                  335  
 Ser Pro Trp

15

## (2) INFORMATION FOR SEQ ID NO:6:

20

- (i) SEQUENCE CHARACTERISTICS:  
     (A) LENGTH: 339 amino acids  
     (B) TYPE: amino acid  
     (C) STRANDEDNESS:  
 25      (D) TOPOLOGY: linear

(ii) MOLECULE TYPE: protein

30

(iii) HYPOTHETICAL: NO

(vi) ORIGINAL SOURCE:  
     (A) ORGANISM: Bovine

35

## (xi) SEQUENCE DESCRIPTION: SEQ ID NO:6:

Ile Tyr Leu Leu Glu Cys Lys Thr Gly Asn Gly Gln Thr Tyr Arg Gly  
 1                                  5                                  10                                  15  
 40 Thr Thr Ala Glu Thr Lys Ser Gly Val Thr Cys Gln Lys Trp Ser Ala  
                   20                                  25                                  30  
 Thr Ser Pro His Val Pro Lys Phe Ser Pro Glu Lys Phe Pro Leu Ala  
 45                  35                                  40                                  45  
 Gly Leu Glu Glu Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro Asp Asn Asp Glu Asn Gly  
                   50                                  55                                  60  
 50 Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr Thr Asp Pro Asp Lys Arg Tyr Asp Tyr Cys Asp  
                   65                                  70                                  75                                  80  
 Ile Pro Glu Cys Glu Asp Lys Cys Met His Cys Ser Gly Glu Asn Tyr  
                   85                                  90                                  95  
 55 Glu Gly Lys Ile Ala Lys Thr Met Ser Gly Arg Asp Cys Gln Ala Trp  
                   100                                  105                                  110  
 Asp Ser Gln Ser Pro His Ala His Gly Tyr Ile Pro Ser Lys Phe Pro

86

	115	120	125
5	Asn Lys Asn Leu Lys Met 130	Asn Tyr Cys Arg 135	Asn Pro Asp Gly Glu Pro 140
10	Arg Pro Trp Cys Phe Thr 145	Thr Asp Pro Gln Lys 150	Arg Trp Glu Phe Cys 155
15	Asp Ile Pro Arg Cys Thr 165	Thr Pro Pro Pro Ser 170	Ser Gly Pro Lys Tyr 175
20	Gln Cys Leu Lys Gly Thr 180	Gly Lys Asn Tyr Gly 185	Gly Thr Val Ala Val 190
25	Thr Glu Ser Gly His Thr 195	Cys Gln Arg Trp Ser 200	Glu Gln Thr Pro His 205
30	Lys His Asn Arg Thr Pro 210	Glu Asn Phe Pro Cys 215	Lys Asn Leu Glu Glu 220
35	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn Pro 225	Asp Gly Glu Lys Ala 230	Pro Trp Cys Tyr Thr 235
40	Thr Asn Ser Glu Val Arg 245	Trp Glu Tyr Cys Thr 250	Ile Pro Ser Cys Glu 255
45	Ser Ser Pro Leu Ser Thr 260	Glu Arg Met Asp Val 265	Pro Val Pro Pro Glu 270
50	Gln Thr Pro Val Pro Gln 275	Asp Cys Tyr His Gly 280	Asn Gly Gln Ser Tyr 285
	Arg Gly Thr Ser Ser Thr 290	Thr Ile Thr Gly Arg 295	Lys Cys Gln Ser Trp 300
	Ser Ser Met Thr Pro His 305	Arg His Leu Lys Thr 310	Pro Glu Asn Tyr Pro 315
	Asn Ala Gly Leu Thr Met 325	Asn Tyr Cys Arg Asn 330	Pro Asp Ala Asp Lys 335
	Ser Pro Trp		

## Claims

We claim:

- 5                   1.    Angiostatin.
2.    Angiostatin of Claim 1, comprising a  
                  protein having a molecular weight of between approximately  
                  38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing  
10               polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid  
                  sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen  
                  fragment beginning at approximately amino acid number 98 of  
                  a murine plasminogen molecule.
3.    Angiostatin of Claim 2, wherein the amino  
15               acid sequence is a plasminogen fragment derived from human  
                  plasminogen, murine plasminogen, bovine plasminogen,  
                  Rhesus plasminogen or porcine plasminogen.
4.    Angiostatin of Claim 3, wherein the amino  
20               acid sequence is selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID  
                  NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ  
                  ID NO:6.
5.    Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein the protein  
25               is capable of inhibiting angiogenesis.
6.    Angiostatin of Claim 3, wherein the  
                  plasminogen fragment has endothelial inhibiting activity.
7.    Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein the protein  
30               is capable of inhibiting the angiogenesis-related diseases.
8.    Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein the  
35               angiogenesis related disease is cancer.

9. Angiostatin of Claim 1, comprising:  
a protein having a molecular weight of  
between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as  
determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis;  
the protein being capable of binding lysine;  
and  
the protein being capable of inhibiting  
angiogenesis.

10

10. A method of treating a human or animal  
with an angiogenic mediated disease comprising administering  
to the human or animal with the angiogenic mediated disease  
an effective amount of angiostatin.

15

11. A method of Claim 10, wherein angiostatin  
is a protein having a molecular weight of between  
approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined  
by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an  
amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine  
plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a  
murine plasminogen molecule.

20

12. The method of Claim 11, wherein the  
amino acid sequence is a plasminogen fragment derived from  
human plasminogen, murine plasminogen, bovine  
plasminogen, Rhesus plasminogen or porcine plasminogen.

25

13. The method of Claim 11, wherein the  
amino acid sequence is selected from the group consisting of  
SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5,  
and SEQ ID NO:6.

30

## Claims

We claim:

- 5                   1.     Angiostatin.
2.     Angiostatin of Claim 1, comprising a  
                  protein having a molecular weight of between approximately  
                  38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing  
10               polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid  
                  sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen  
                  fragment beginning at approximately amino acid number 98 of  
                  a murine plasminogen molecule.
3.     Angiostatin of Claim 2, wherein the amino  
15               acid sequence is a plasminogen fragment derived from human  
                  plasminogen, murine plasminogen, bovine plasminogen,  
                  Rhesus plasminogen or porcine plasminogen.
4.     Angiostatin of Claim 3, wherein the amino  
20               acid sequence is selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID  
                  NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ  
                  ID NO:6.
5.     Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein the protein  
25               is capable of inhibiting angiogenesis.
6.     Angiostatin of Claim 3, wherein the  
                  plasminogen fragment has endothelial inhibiting activity.
7.     Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein the protein  
30               is capable of inhibiting the angiogenesis-related diseases.
8.     Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein the  
35               angiogenesis related disease is cancer.

9. Angiostatin of Claim 1, comprising:  
a protein having a molecular weight of  
between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as  
determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis;  
the protein being capable of binding lysine;  
and  
the protein being capable of inhibiting  
angiogenesis.

10

10. A method of treating a human or animal  
with an angiogenic mediated disease comprising administering  
to the human or animal with the angiogenic mediated disease  
an effective amount of angiostatin.

15

11. A method of Claim 10, wherein angiostatin  
is a protein having a molecular weight of between  
approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined  
by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an  
amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine  
plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a  
murine plasminogen molecule.

20

12. The method of Claim 11, wherein the  
amino acid sequence is a plasminogen fragment derived from  
human plasminogen, murine plasminogen, bovine  
plasminogen, Rhesus plasminogen or porcine plasminogen.

25

13. The method of Claim 11, wherein the  
amino acid sequence is selected from the group consisting of  
SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5,  
and SEQ ID NO:6.

30



14. The method of Claim 10, wherein the angiogenic disease is selected from the group consisting of cancer, arthritis, macular degeneration and diabetic retinopathy.

5

15. Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein angiostatin comprises:

a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis;

10

the protein being capable of binding lysine; and

the protein being capable of inhibiting angiogenesis.

15

16. A method of diagnosing a disease or determining the prognosis of a disease mediated by angiogenesis comprising the step of determining the concentration of a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a murine plasminogen molecule.

20

25

17. The method of Claim 16, wherein the disease is cancer.

18. A composition comprising, an isolated DNA sequence that codes for angiostatin.

30

19. The composition of Claim 18, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence substantially similar to SEQ ID NO:2, and wherein the amino acid sequence has anti-angiogenic activity in a mouse tumor model.

35

20. The composition of Claim 18, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ ID NO:6.

21. The composition of Claim 18, further comprising, a vector associated with the DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in a cell.

22. A composition comprising a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in the cell.

23. The composition of Claim 22, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ ID NO:6.

24. A method comprising, implanting into a human or non-human animal a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in the cell.

25. The composition of Claim 24, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ ID NO:6.

26. A composition comprising angiostatin and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

14. The method of Claim 10, wherein the angiogenic disease is selected from the group consisting of cancer, arthritis, macular degeneration and diabetic retinopathy.

5

15. Angiostatin of Claim 1, wherein angiostatin comprises:

a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis;

10

the protein being capable of binding lysine; and

the protein being capable of inhibiting angiogenesis.

15

16. A method of diagnosing a disease or determining the prognosis of a disease mediated by angiogenesis comprising the step of determining the concentration of a protein having a molecular weight of between approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a murine plasminogen molecule.

20

25

17. The method of Claim 16, wherein the disease is cancer.

18. A composition comprising, an isolated DNA sequence that codes for angiostatin.

30

19. The composition of Claim 18, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence substantially similar to SEQ ID NO:2, and wherein the amino acid sequence has anti-angiogenic activity in a mouse tumor model.

35

20. The composition of Claim 18, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ ID NO:6.

21. The composition of Claim 18, further comprising, a vector associated with the DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in a cell.

22. A composition comprising a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in the cell.

23. The composition of Claim 22, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ ID NO:6.

24. A method comprising, implanting into a human or non-human animal a cell containing a vector, wherein the vector contains a DNA sequence encoding angiostatin, and wherein the vector is capable of expressing angiostatin when present in the cell.

25. The composition of Claim 24, wherein the DNA sequence codes for an amino acid sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO:2, SEQ ID NO:3, SEQ ID NO:4, SEQ ID NO:5, and SEQ ID NO:6.

26. A composition comprising angiostatin and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

27. The composition of claim 26, further comprising a sustained-release matrix.

5           28. The composition of claim 26, wherein  
angiostatin is a protein having a molecular weight of between  
approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined  
by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an  
amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine  
10           plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a  
murine plasminogen molecule.

          29. A composition comprising an antibody that  
specifically binds to angiostatin, wherein the antibody does not  
bind to plasminogen.  
15

1/27

## FIGURE 1

## Mouse Plasminogen Sequence:

```

met asp his lys glu val ile leu leu phe leu leu leu leu lys
pro gly gln gly asp ser leu asp gly tyr ile ser thr gln gly
ala ser leu phe ser leu thr lys lys gln leu ala ala gly gly
val ser asp cys leu ala lys cys glu gly glu thr asp phe val
cys arg ser phe gln tyr his ser lys glu gln gln cys val ile
met ala glu asn ser lys thr ser ser ile ile arg met arg asp
val ile leu phe glu lys arg val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr
gly ile gly asn gly tyr arg gly thr met ser arg thr lys ser
gly val ala cys gln lys trp gly ala thr phe pro his val pro
asn tyr ser pro ser thr his pro asn glu gly leu glu glu asn
tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu gln gly pro trp cys tyr
thr thr asp pro asp lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asn ile pro glu
cys glu glu glu cys met tyr cys ser gly glu lys tyr glu gly
lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu asp cys gln ala trp asp
ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ala lys phe pro
ser lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys his asn pro asp gly glu
pro arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro thr lys arg trp glu
tyr cys asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro pro pro ser
pro thr tyr gln cys leu lys gly arg gly glu asn tyr arg gly
thr val ser val thr val ser gly lys thr cys gln arg trp ser
glu gln thr pro his arg his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro
cys lys asn leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu
thr ala pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp ser gln leu arg trp glu
tyr cys glu ile pro ser cys glu ser ser ala ser pro asp gln
ser asp ser ser val pro pro glu glu gln thr pro val val gln
glu cys tyr gln ser asp gly gln ser tyr arg gly thr ser ser
thr thr ile thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp ala ala met phe
pro his arg his ser lys thr pro glu asn phe pro asp ala gly
leu glu met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly asp lys gly pro
trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro ser val arg trp glu tyr cys asn
leu lys arg cys ser glu thr gly gly ser val val glu leu pro
thr val ser gln glu pro ser gly pro ser asp ser glu thr asp
cys met tyr gly asn gly lys asp tyr arg gly lys thr ala val
thr ala ala gly thr pro cys gln gly trp ala ala gln glu pro
his arg his ser ile phe thr pro gln thr asn pro arg ala asp
leu glu lys asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly asp val asn gly
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asn pro arg lys leu tyr asp tyr cys
asp ile pro leu cys ala ser ala ser ser phe glu cys gly lys
pro gln val glu pro lys lys cys pro gly arg val val gly gly
cys val ala asn pro his ser trp pro trp gln ile ser leu arg
thr arg phe thr gly gln his phe cys gly gly thr leu ile ala
pro glu trp val leu thr ala ala his cys leu glu lys ser ser
arg pro glu phe tyr lys val ile leu gly ala his glu glu tyr
ile arg gly leu asp val gln glu ile ser val ala lys leu ile
leu glu pro asn asn arg asp ile ala leu leu lys leu ser arg
pro ala thr ile thr asp lys val ile pro ala cys leu pro ser

```

27. The composition of claim 26, further comprising a sustained-release matrix.

5           28. The composition of claim 26, wherein  
angiostatin is a protein having a molecular weight of between  
approximately 38 kilodaltons and 45 kilodaltons as determined  
by reducing polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and having an  
amino acid sequence substantially similar to that of a murine  
10       plasminogen fragment beginning at amino acid number 98 of a  
murine plasminogen molecule.

15           29. A composition comprising an antibody that  
specifically binds to angiostatin, wherein the antibody does not  
bind to plasminogen.

1/27

## FIGURE 1

## Mouse Plasminogen Sequence:

```

met asp his lys glu val ile leu leu phe leu leu leu leu lys
pro gly gln gly asp ser leu asp gly tyr ile ser thr gln gly
ala ser leu phe ser leu thr lys lys gln leu ala ala gly gly
val ser asp cys leu ala lys cys glu gly glu thr asp phe val
cys arg ser phe gln tyr his ser lys glu gln gln cys val ile
met ala glu asn ser lys thr ser ser ile ile arg met arg asp
val ile leu phe glu lys arg val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr
gly ile gly asn gly tyr arg gly thr met ser arg thr lys ser
gly val ala cys gln lys trp gly ala thr phe pro his val pro
asn tyr ser pro ser thr his pro asn glu gly leu glu glu asn
tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu gln gly pro trp cys tyr
thr thr asp pro asp lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asn ile pro glu
cys glu glu glu cys met tyr cys ser gly glu lys tyr glu gly
lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu asp cys gln ala trp asp
ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ala lys phe pro
ser lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys his asn pro asp gly glu
pro arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro thr lys arg trp glu
tyr cys asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro pro pro ser
pro thr tyr gln cys leu lys gly arg gly glu asn tyr arg gly
thr val ser val thr val ser gly lys thr cys gln arg trp ser
glu gln thr pro his arg his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro
cys lys asn leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu
thr ala pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp ser gln leu arg trp glu
tyr cys glu ile pro ser cys glu ser ser ala ser pro asp gln
ser asp ser ser val pro pro glu glu gln thr pro val val gln
glu cys tyr gln ser asp gly gln ser tyr arg gly thr ser ser
thr thr ile thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp ala ala met phe
pro his arg his ser lys thr pro glu asn phe pro asp ala gly
leu glu met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly asp lys gly pro
trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro ser val arg trp glu tyr cys asn
leu lys arg cys ser glu thr gly gly ser val val glu leu pro
thr val ser gln glu pro ser gly pro ser asp ser glu thr asp
cys met tyr gly asn gly lys asp tyr arg gly lys thr ala val
thr ala ala gly thr pro cys gln gly trp ala ala gln glu pro
his arg his ser ile phe thr pro gln thr asn pro arg ala asp
leu glu lys asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly asp val asn gly
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asn pro arg lys leu tyr asp tyr cys
asp ile pro leu cys ala ser ala ser ser phe glu cys gly lys
pro gln val glu pro lys lys cys pro gly arg val val gly gly
cys val ala asn pro his ser trp pro trp gln ile ser leu arg
thr arg phe thr gly gln his phe cys gly gly thr leu ile ala
pro glu trp val leu thr ala ala his cys leu glu lys ser ser
arg pro glu phe tyr lys val ile leu gly ala his glu glu tyr
ile arg gly leu asp val gln glu ile ser val ala lys leu ile
leu glu pro asn asn arg asp ile ala leu leu lys leu ser arg
pro ala thr ile thr asp lys val ile pro ala cys leu pro ser

```



2/27

pro asn tyr met val ala asp arg thr ile cys tyr ile thr gly  
trp gly glu thr gln gly thr phe gly ala gly arg leu lys glu  
ala gln leu pro val ile glu asn lys val cys asn arg val glu  
tyr leu asn asn arg val lys ser thr glu leu cys ala gly gln  
leu ala gly gly val asp ser cys gln gly asp ser gly gly pro  
leu val cys phe glu lys asp lys tyr ile leu gln gly val thr  
ser trp gly leu gly cys ala arg pro asn lys pro gly val tyr  
val arg val ser arg phe val asp trp ile glu arg glu met arg  
asn asn

3/27

## FIGURE 2

MOUSE  
HUMAN  
RHESUS MONKEY  
PORCINE  
BOVINE

```

val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly ile gly asn gly tyr arg gly
val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly asn gly lys asn tyr arg gly
val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly asn gly lys asn tyr arg gly
ile tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly asn gly lys asn tyr arg gly
ile tyr leu leu glu cys lys thr gly asn gly gln thr tyr arg gly

thr met ser arg thr lys ser gly val ala cys gln lys trp gly ala
thr met ser lys thr lys asn gly ile thr cys gln lys trp ser ser
thr met ser lys thr arg thr gly ile thr cys gln lys trp ser ser
thr thr ser ser lys thr lys ser gly val ile cys gln lys trp ser val
thr thr ala glu thr lys ser gly val thr cys gln lys trp ser ala

thr phe pro his val pro asn tyr ser pro ser thr his pro asn glu
thr ser pro his arg pro arg phe ser pro ala thr his pro ser glu
thr ser pro his arg pro thr phe ser pro ala thr his pro ser glu
ser ser pro his ile pro lys tyr ser pro glu lys phe pro leu ala
thr ser pro his val pro lys phe ser pro glu lys phe pro leu ala

gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu gln gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp pro gln gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp gly gln gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu lys gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu asn gly

pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro asp lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asn
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro glu lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asp
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro glu glu arg phe asp tyr cys asp
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro glu thr arg phe asp tyr cys asp
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro asp lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asp

ile pro glu cys glu glu glu cys met tyr cys ser gly glu lys tyr
ile leu glu cys glu glu glu cys met his cys ser gly glu asn tyr
ile pro glu cys glu asp glu cys met his cys ser gly glu asn tyr
ile pro glu cys glu asp glu cys met his cys ser gly glu his tyr
ile pro glu cys glu asp lys cys met his cys ser gly glu asn tyr

glu gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu asp cys gln ala trp
asp gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu glu cys gln ala trp
asp gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu glu cys gln ala trp
glu gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly ile glu cys gln ser trp
glu gly lys ile ala lys thr met ser gly arg asp cys gln ala trp

```

2/27

pro asn tyr met val ala asp arg thr ile cys tyr ile thr gly  
trp gly glu thr gln gly thr phe gly ala gly arg leu lys glu  
ala gln leu pro val ile glu asn lys val cys asn arg val glu  
tyr leu asn asn arg val lys ser thr glu leu cys ala gly gln  
leu ala gly gly val asp ser cys gln gly asp ser gly gly pro  
leu val cys phe glu lys asp lys tyr ile leu gln gly val thr  
ser trp gly leu gly cys ala arg pro asn lys pro gly val tyr  
val arg val ser arg phe val asp trp ile glu arg glu met arg  
asn asn

3/27

## FIGURE 2

MOUSE  
HUMAN  
RHESUS MONKEY  
PORCINE  
BOVINE

```

val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly ile gly asn gly tyr arg gly
val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly asn gly lys asn tyr arg gly
val tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly asn gly lys asn tyr arg gly
ile tyr leu ser glu cys lys thr gly asn gly lys asn tyr arg gly
ile tyr leu leu glu cys lys thr gly asn gly gln thr tyr arg gly

thr met ser arg thr lys ser gly val ala cys gln lys trp gly ala
thr met ser lys thr lys asn gly ile thr cys gln lys trp ser ser
thr met ser lys thr arg thr gly ile thr cys gln lys trp ser ser
thr thr ser ser lys thr lys ser gly val ile cys gln lys trp ser val
thr thr ala glu thr lys ser gly val thr cys gln lys trp ser ala

thr phe pro his val pro asn tyr ser pro ser thr his pro asn glu
thr ser pro his arg pro arg phe ser pro ala thr his pro ser glu
thr ser pro his arg pro thr phe ser pro ala thr his pro ser glu
ser ser pro his ile pro lys tyr ser pro glu lys phe pro leu ala
thr ser pro his val pro lys phe ser pro glu lys phe pro leu ala

gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu gln gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp pro gln gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp gly gln gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu lys gly
gly leu glu glu asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp asn asp glu asn gly

pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro asp lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asn
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro glu lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asp
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro glu glu arg phe asp tyr cys asp
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro glu thr arg phe asp tyr cys asp
pro trp cys tyr thr thr asp pro asp lys arg tyr asp tyr cys asp

ile pro glu cys glu glu glu cys met tyr cys ser gly glu lys tyr
ile leu glu cys glu glu glu cys met his cys ser gly glu asn tyr
ile pro glu cys glu asp glu cys met his cys ser gly glu asn tyr
ile pro glu cys glu asp glu cys met his cys ser gly glu his tyr
ile pro glu cys glu asp lys cys met his cys ser gly glu asn tyr

glu gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu asp cys gln ala trp
asp gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu glu cys gln ala trp
asp gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly leu glu cys gln ala trp
glu gly lys ile ser lys thr met ser gly ile glu cys gln ser trp
glu gly lys ile ala lys thr met ser gly arg asp cys gln ala trp

```

4/27

asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ala lys phe pro  
 asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ser lys phe pro  
 asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ser lys phe pro  
 gly ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr leu pro ser lys phe pro  
 asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ser lys phe pro

ser lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys his asn pro asp gly glu pro  
 asn lys asn leu lys lys asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp arg glu leu  
 asn lys asn leu lys lys asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu pro  
 asn lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu pro  
 asn lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu pro

arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro thr lys arg trp glu tyr cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro asn lys arg trp glu leu cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro asn lys arg trp glu leu cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro asn lys arg trp glu phe cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro gln lys arg trp glu phe cys

asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro pro pro ser pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro ser ser gly pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro ser ser gly pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro thr ser gly pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro ser ser gly pro lys tyr

gln cys leu lys gly arg gly glu asn tyr arg gly thr val ser val  
 gln cys leu lys gly thr gly glu asn tyr arg gly asn val ala val  
 gln cys leu lys gly thr gly glu asn tyr arg gly asp val ala val  
 gln cys leu lys gly arg gly glu asn tyr arg gly thr val ser val  
 gln cys leu lys gly thr gly lys asn tyr gly gly thr val ala val

thr val ser gly lys thr cys gln arg trp ser glu gln thr pro his  
 thr val ser gly his thr cys gln his trp ser ala gln thr pro his  
 thr val ser gly his thr cys his gly trp ser ala gln thr pro his  
 thr ala ser gly his thr cys gln arg trp ser ala gln ser pro his  
 thr glu ser gly his thr cys gln arg trp ser glu gln thr pro his

arg his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu glu glu  
 thr his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu asp glu  
 thr his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu asp glu  
 lys his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu glu glu  
 lys his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu glu glu

asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu thr ala pro trp cys tyr thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly lys arg ala pro trp cys his thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu lys ala pro trp cys tyr thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu thr ala pro trp cys tyr thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu lys ala pro trp cys tyr thr

5/27

thr asp ser gln leu arg trp glu tyr cys glu ile pro ser cys glu  
thr asn ser gln val arg trp glu tyr cys lys ile pro ser cys asp  
thr asn ser gln val arg trp glu tyr cys lys ile pro ser cys glu  
thr asp ser glu val arg trp asp tyr cys lys ile pro ser cys gly  
thr asn ser glu val arg trp glu tyr cys thr ile pro ser cys glu

ser ser ala ser pro asp gln ser asp ser ser val pro pro glu glu  
ser ser pro val ser thr glu gln leu ala pro thr ala pro pro glu  
ser ser pro val ser thr glu pro leu asp pro thr ala pro pro glu  
ser ser thr thr ser thr glu his leu asp ala pro val pro pro glu  
ser ser pro leu ser thr glu arg met asp val pro val pro pro glu

gln thr pro val val gln glu cys tyr gln ser asp gly gln ser tyr  
leu thr pro val val gln asp cys tyr his gly asp gly gln ser tyr  
leu thr pro val val gln glu cys tyr his gly asp gly gln ser tyr  
gln thr pro val ala gln asp cys tyr arg gly asn gly glu ser tyr  
gln thr pro val pro gln asp cys tyr his gly asn gly gln ser tyr

arg gly thr ser ser thr thr ile thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr thr thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr thr thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr ile thr gly arg lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr ile thr gly arg lys cys gln ser trp

ala ala met phe pro his arg his ser lys thr pro glu asn phe pro  
ser ser met thr pro his arg his gln lys thr pro glu asn tyr pro  
ser ser met thr pro his trp his glu lys thr pro glu asn phe pro  
val ser met thr pro his arg his glu lys thr pro gly asn phe pro  
ser ser met thr pro his arg his leu lys thr pro glu asn tyr pro

asp ala gly leu glu met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys

gly pro trp  
gly pro trp  
gly pro trp  
ser pro trp  
ser pro trp

4/27

asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ala lys phe pro  
 asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ser lys phe pro  
 asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ser lys phe pro  
 gly ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr leu pro ser lys phe pro  
 asp ser gln ser pro his ala his gly tyr ile pro ser lys phe pro

ser lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys his asn pro asp gly glu pro  
 asn lys asn leu lys lys asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp arg glu leu  
 asn lys asn leu lys lys asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu pro  
 asn lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu pro  
 asn lys asn leu lys met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu pro

arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro thr lys arg trp glu tyr cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro asn lys arg trp glu leu cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro asn lys arg trp glu leu cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro asn lys arg trp glu phe cys  
 arg pro trp cys phe thr thr asp pro gln lys arg trp glu phe cys

asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro pro pro ser pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro ser ser gly pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro ser ser gly pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro thr ser gly pro thr tyr  
 asp ile pro arg cys thr thr pro pro pro ser ser gly pro lys tyr

gln cys leu lys gly arg gly glu asn tyr arg gly thr val ser val  
 gln cys leu lys gly thr gly glu asn tyr arg gly asn val ala val  
 gln cys leu lys gly thr gly glu asn tyr arg gly asp val ala val  
 gln cys leu lys gly arg gly glu asn tyr arg gly thr val ser val  
 gln cys leu lys gly thr gly lys asn tyr gly gly thr val ala val

thr val ser gly lys thr cys gln arg trp ser glu gln thr pro his  
 thr val ser gly his thr cys gln his trp ser ala gln thr pro his  
 thr val ser gly his thr cys his gly trp ser ala gln thr pro his  
 thr ala ser gly his thr cys gln arg trp ser ala gln ser pro his  
 thr glu ser gly his thr cys gln arg trp ser glu gln thr pro his

arg his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu glu glu  
 thr his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu asp glu  
 thr his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu asp glu  
 lys his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu glu glu  
 lys his asn arg thr pro glu asn phe pro cys lys asn leu glu glu

asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu thr ala pro trp cys tyr thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly lys arg ala pro trp cys his thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu lys ala pro trp cys tyr thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu thr ala pro trp cys tyr thr  
 asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly glu lys ala pro trp cys tyr thr

5/27

thr asp ser gln leu arg trp glu tyr cys glu ile pro ser cys glu  
thr asn ser gln val arg trp glu tyr cys lys ile pro ser cys asp  
thr asn ser gln val arg trp glu tyr cys lys ile pro ser cys glu  
thr asp ser glu val arg trp asp tyr cys lys ile pro ser cys gly  
thr asn ser glu val arg trp glu tyr cys thr ile pro ser cys glu

ser ser ala ser pro asp gln ser asp ser ser val pro pro glu glu  
ser ser pro val ser thr glu gln leu ala pro thr ala pro pro glu  
ser ser pro val ser thr glu pro leu asp pro thr ala pro pro glu  
ser ser thr thr ser thr glu his leu asp ala pro val pro pro glu  
ser ser pro leu ser thr glu arg met asp val pro val pro pro glu

gln thr pro val val gln glu cys tyr gln ser asp gly gln ser tyr  
leu thr pro val val gln asp cys tyr his gly asp gly gln ser tyr  
leu thr pro val val gln glu cys tyr his gly asp gly gln ser tyr  
gln thr pro val ala gln asp cys tyr arg gly asn gly glu ser tyr  
gln thr pro val pro gln asp cys tyr his gly asn gly gln ser tyr

arg gly thr ser ser thr thr ile thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr thr thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr thr thr gly lys lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr ile thr gly arg lys cys gln ser trp  
arg gly thr ser ser thr thr ile thr gly arg lys cys gln ser trp

ala ala met phe pro his arg his ser lys thr pro glu asn phe pro  
ser ser met thr pro his arg his gln lys thr pro glu asn tyr pro  
ser ser met thr pro his trp his glu lys thr pro glu asn phe pro  
val ser met thr pro his arg his glu lys thr pro gly asn phe pro  
ser ser met thr pro his arg his leu lys thr pro glu asn tyr pro

asp ala gly leu glu met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp gly asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys  
asn ala gly leu thr met asn tyr cys arg asn pro asp ala asp lys

gly pro trp  
gly pro trp  
gly pro trp  
ser pro trp  
ser pro trp



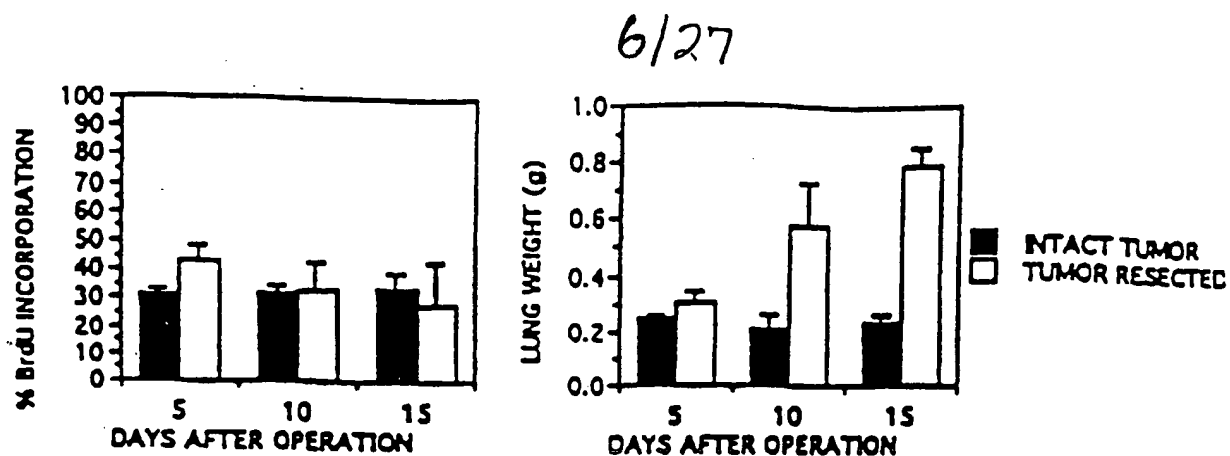


FIGURE 3A

FIGURE 3B

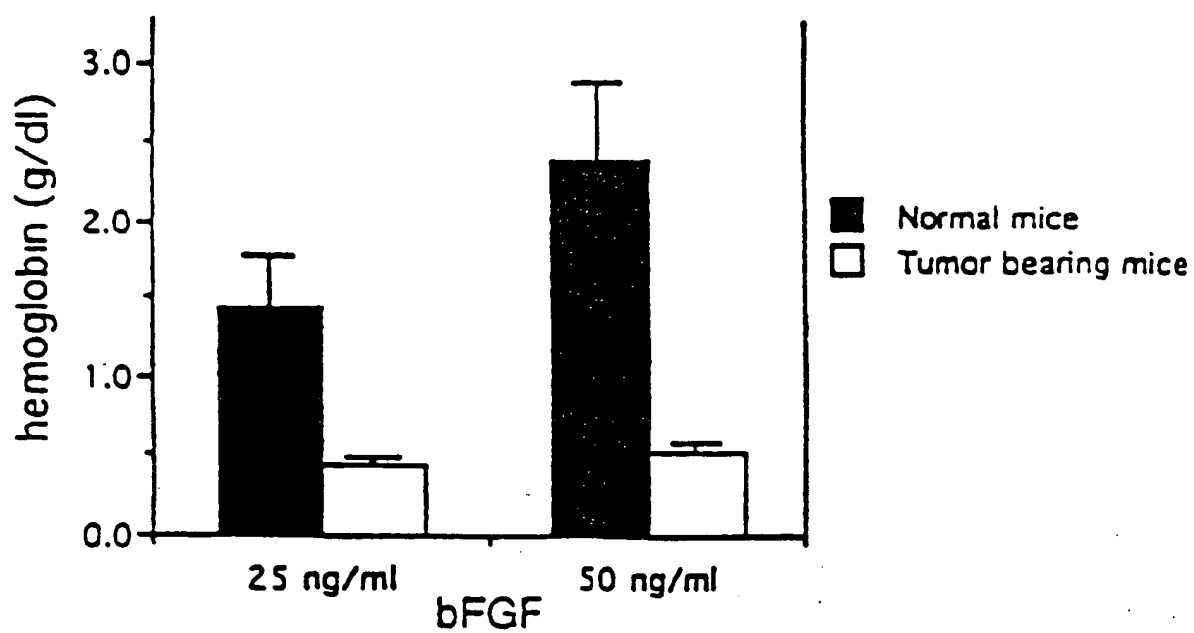


FIGURE 4

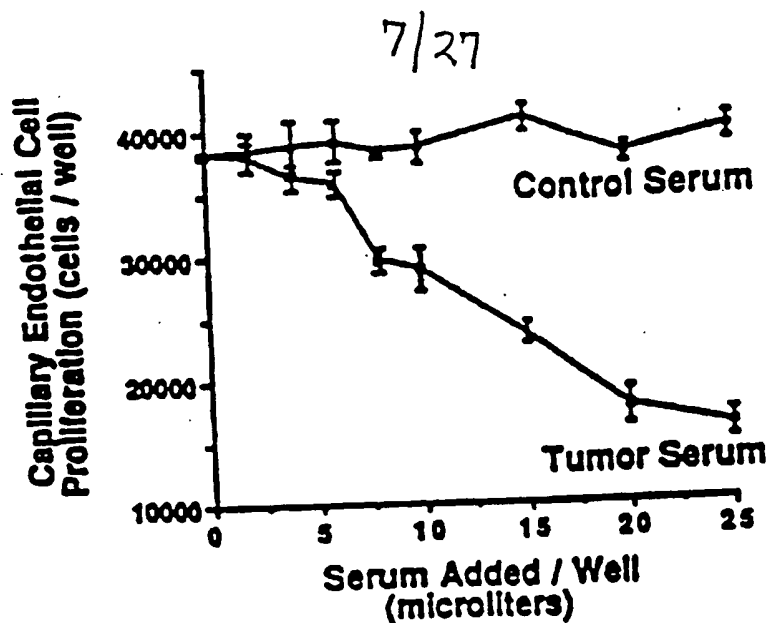


FIGURE 5

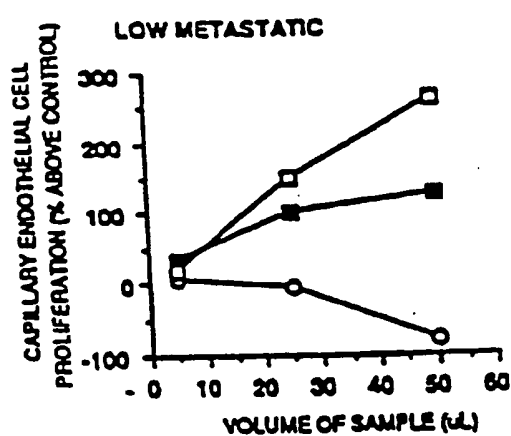


FIGURE 6A

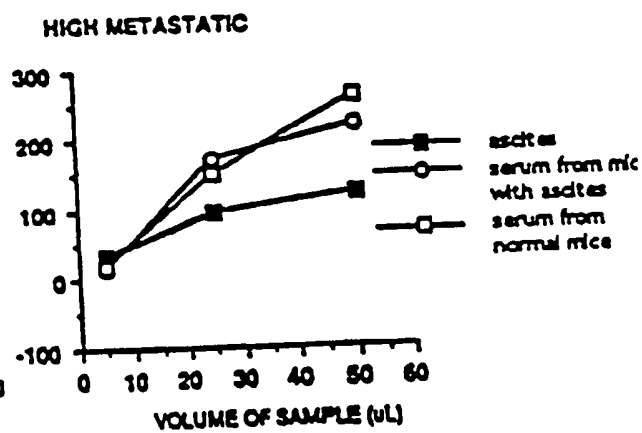


FIGURE 6B

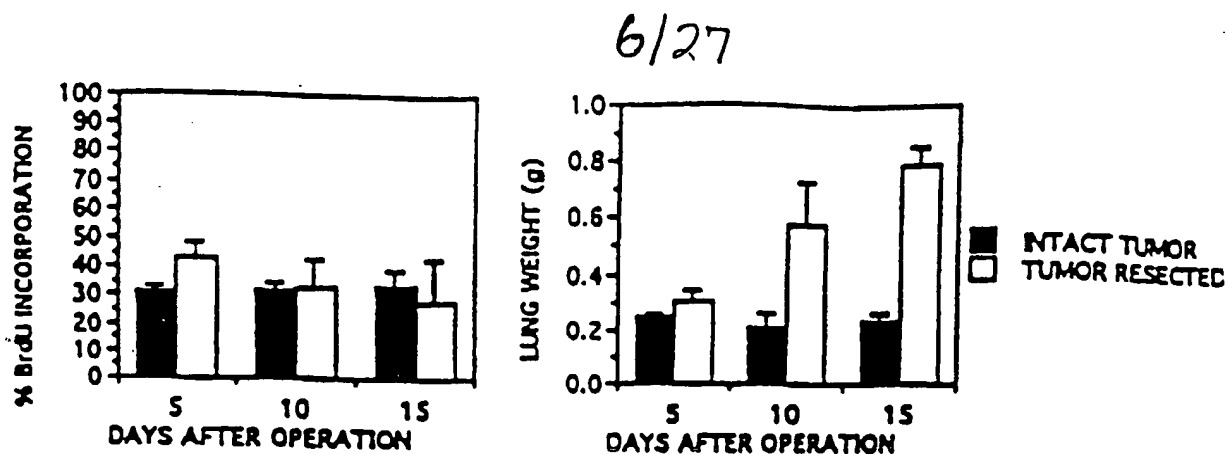


FIGURE 3A

FIGURE 3B

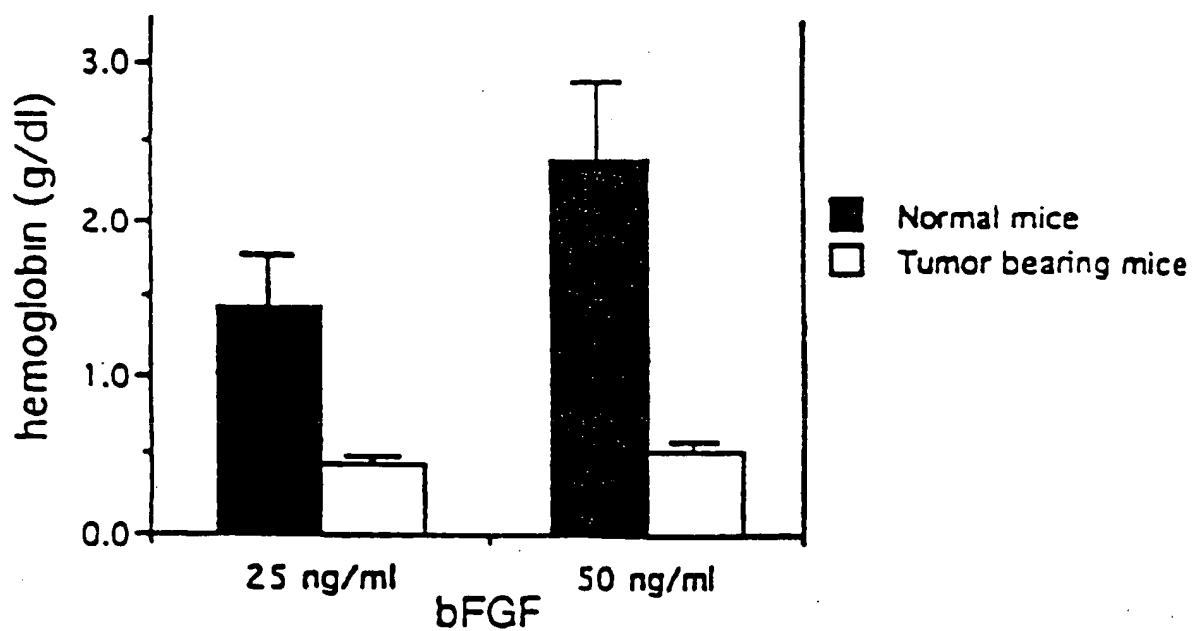


FIGURE 4

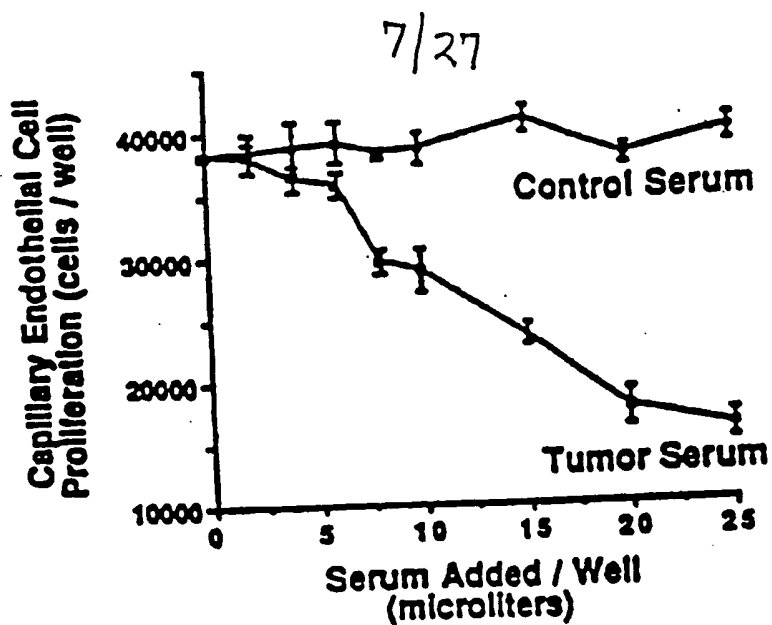


FIGURE 5

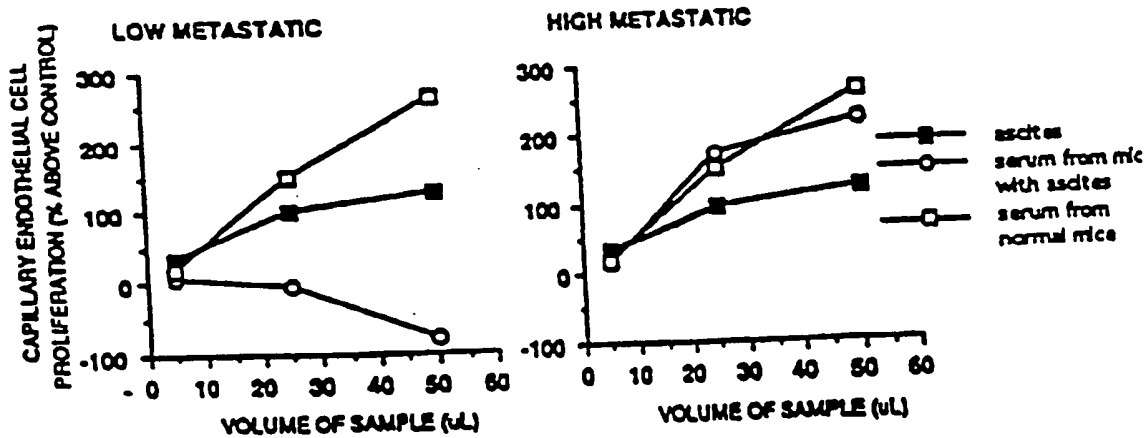


FIGURE 6A

FIGURE 6B

8/27

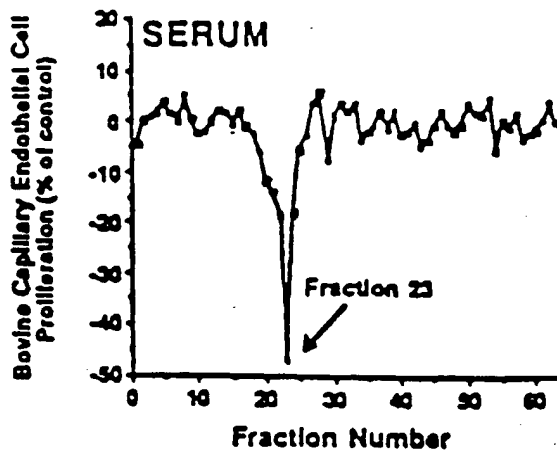


FIGURE 7A

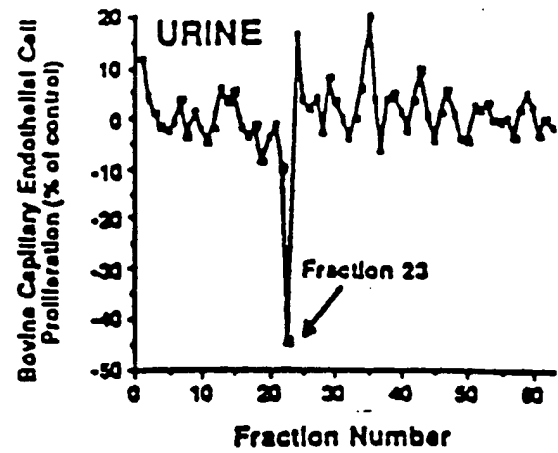


FIGURE 7B

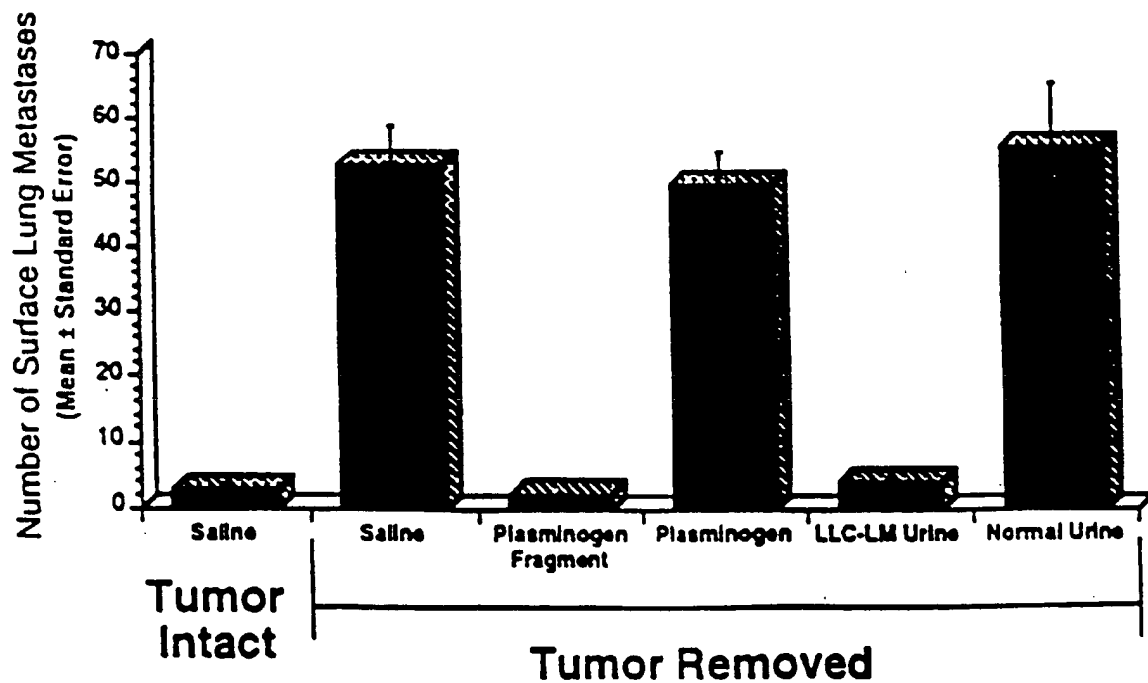


FIGURE 8

9/27

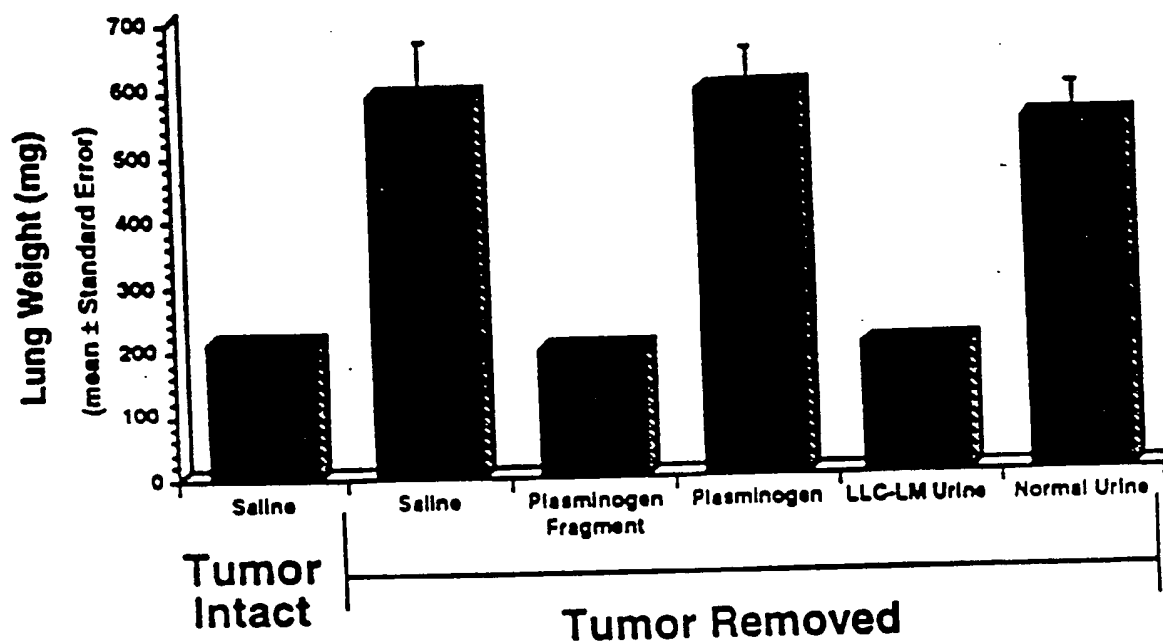


FIGURE 9

8/27

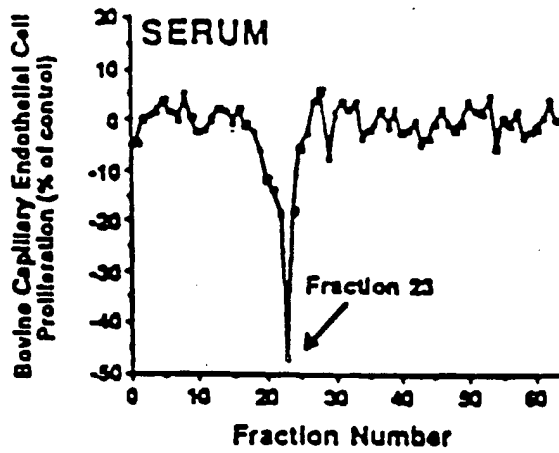


FIGURE 7A

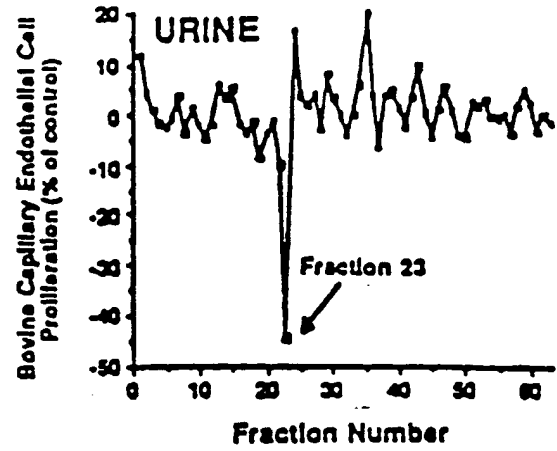


FIGURE 7B

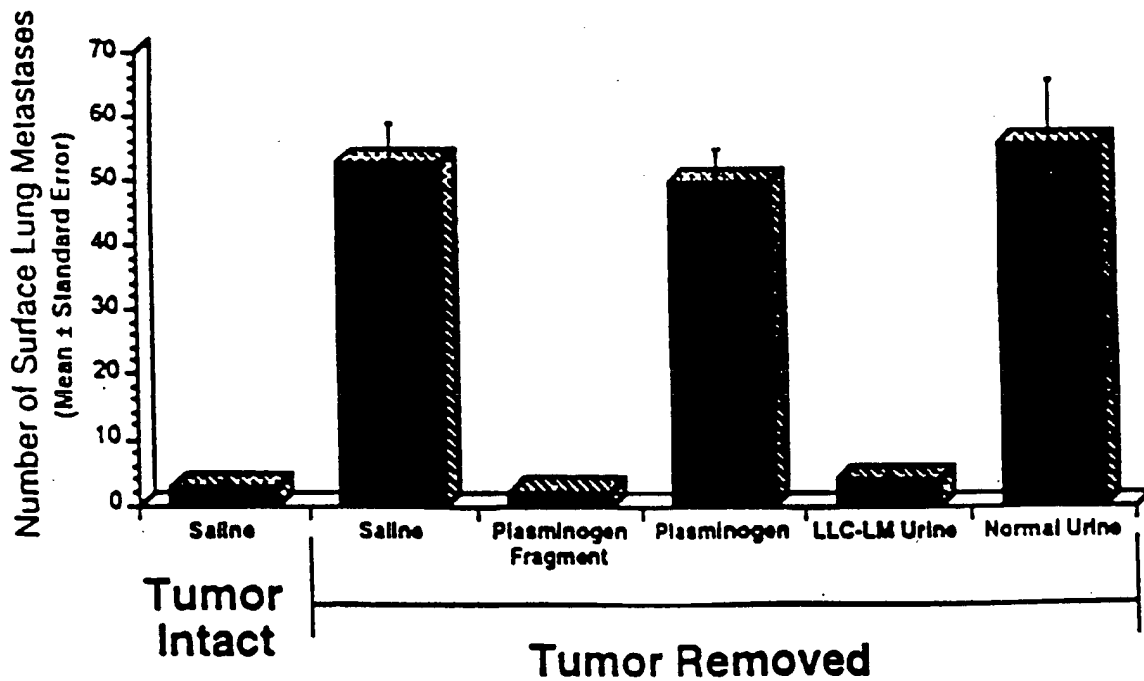


FIGURE 8

9/27

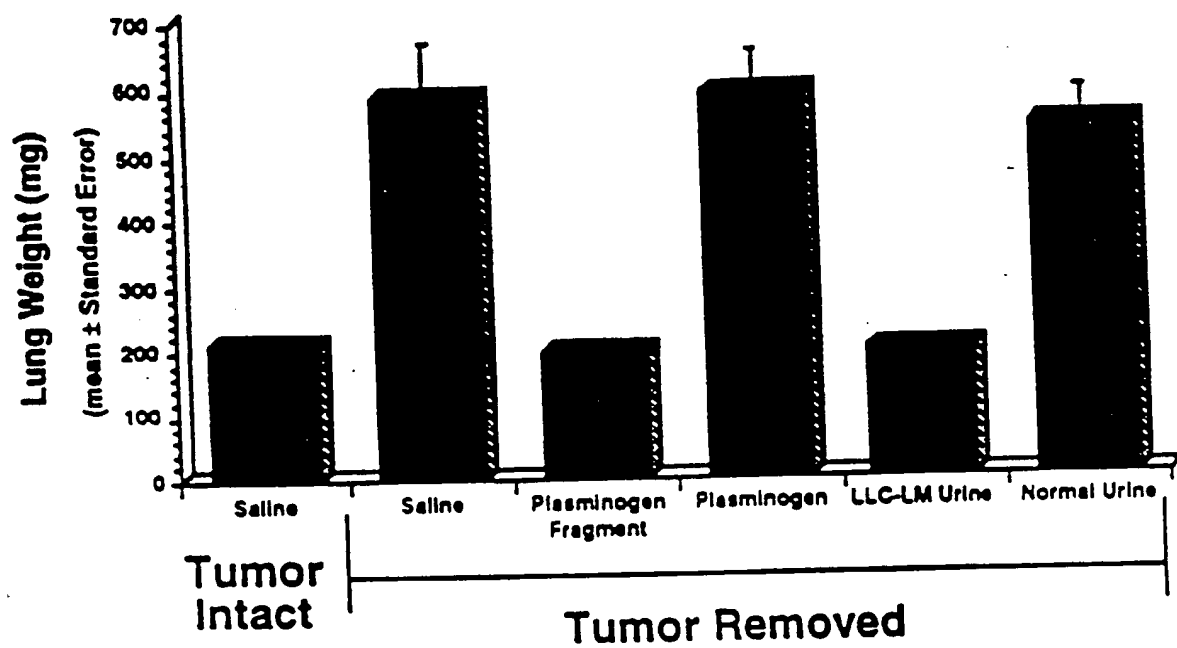


FIGURE 9



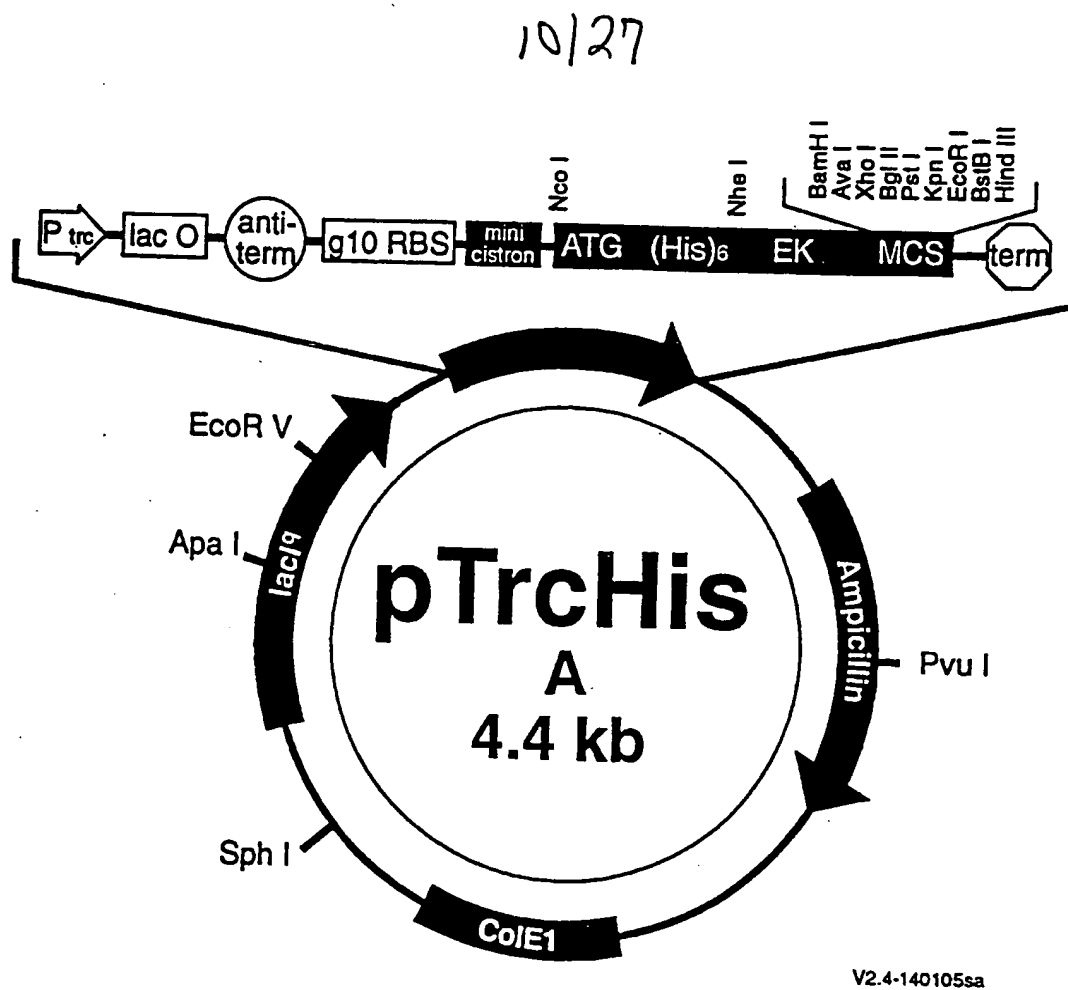
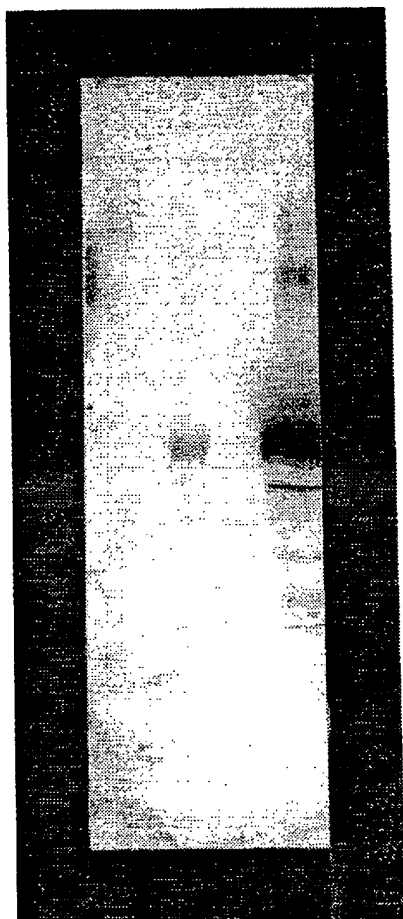


FIGURE 10

11/27



**FIGURE 11**

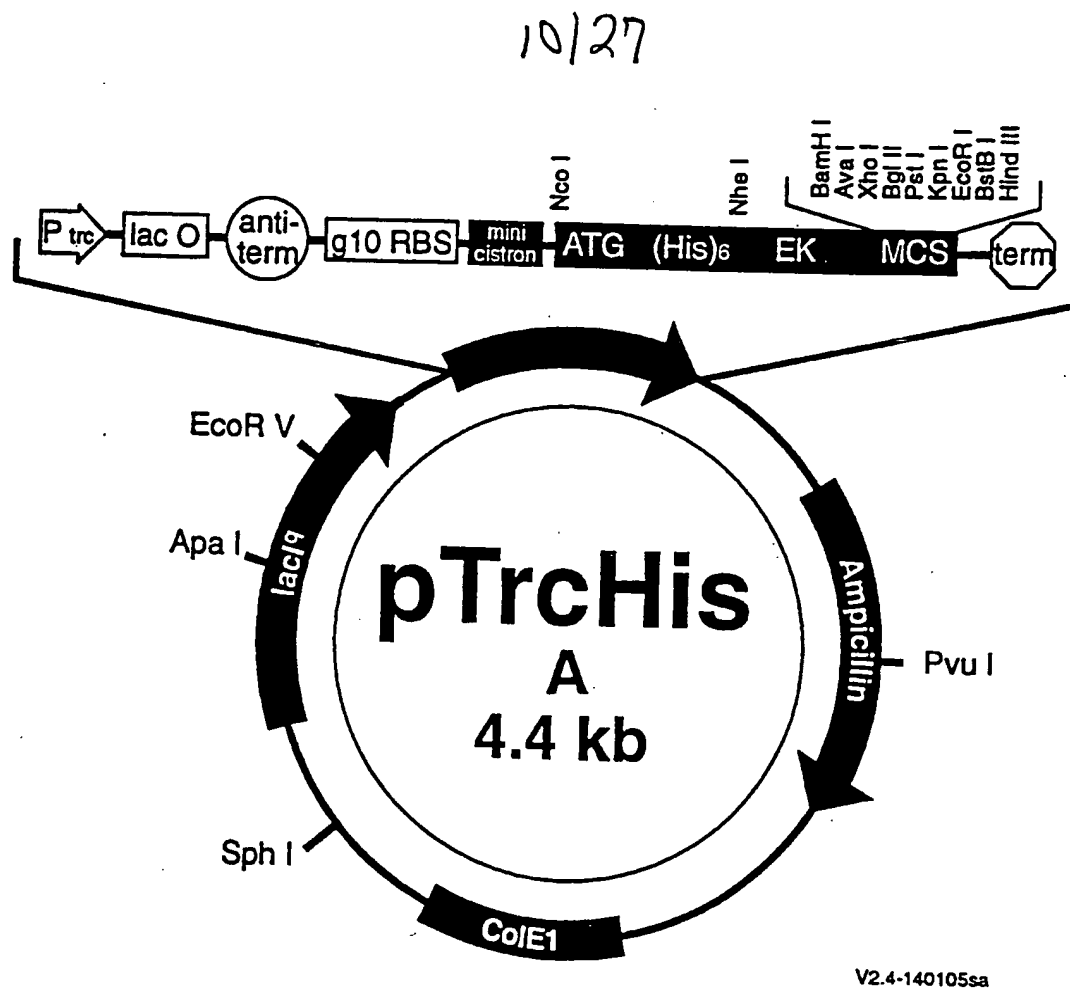
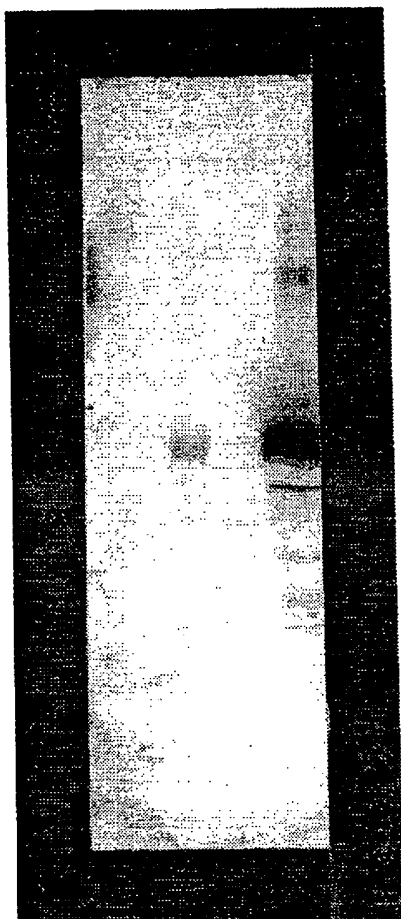


FIGURE 10

11/27



**FIGURE 11**

12/27

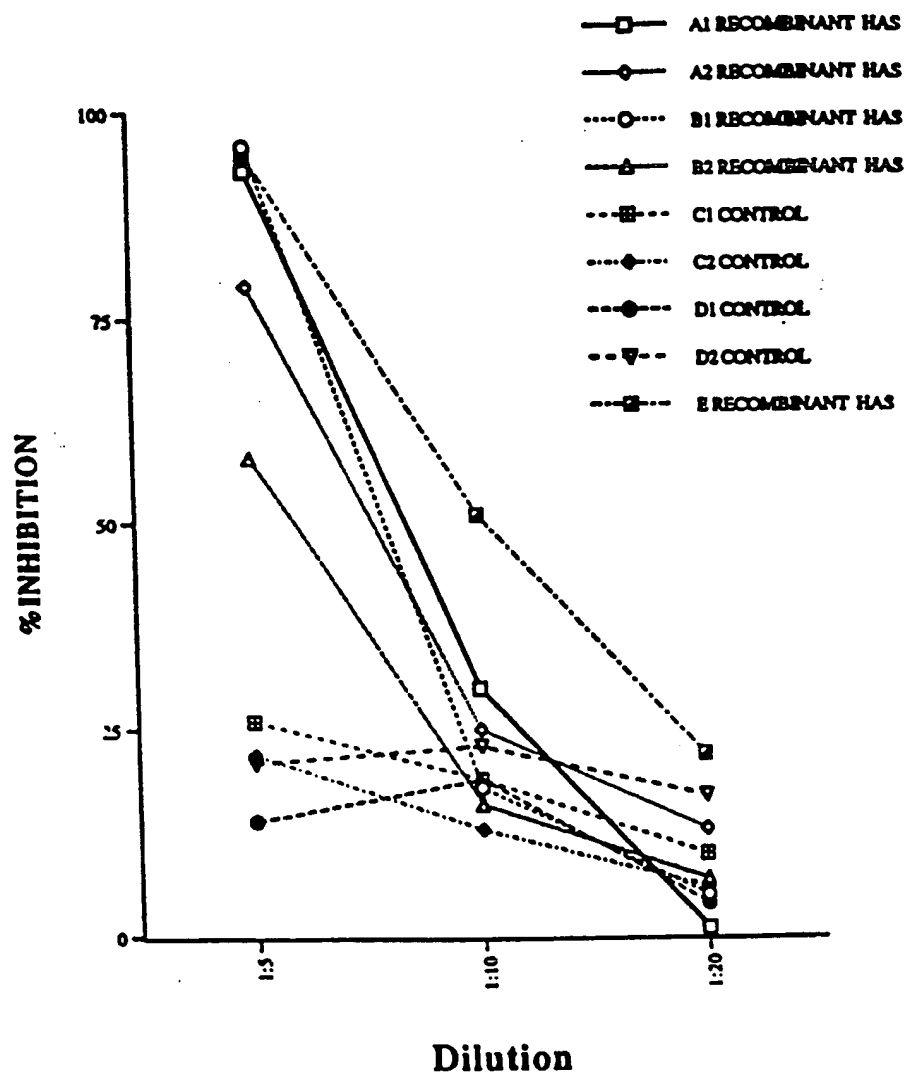


FIGURE 12

13/27

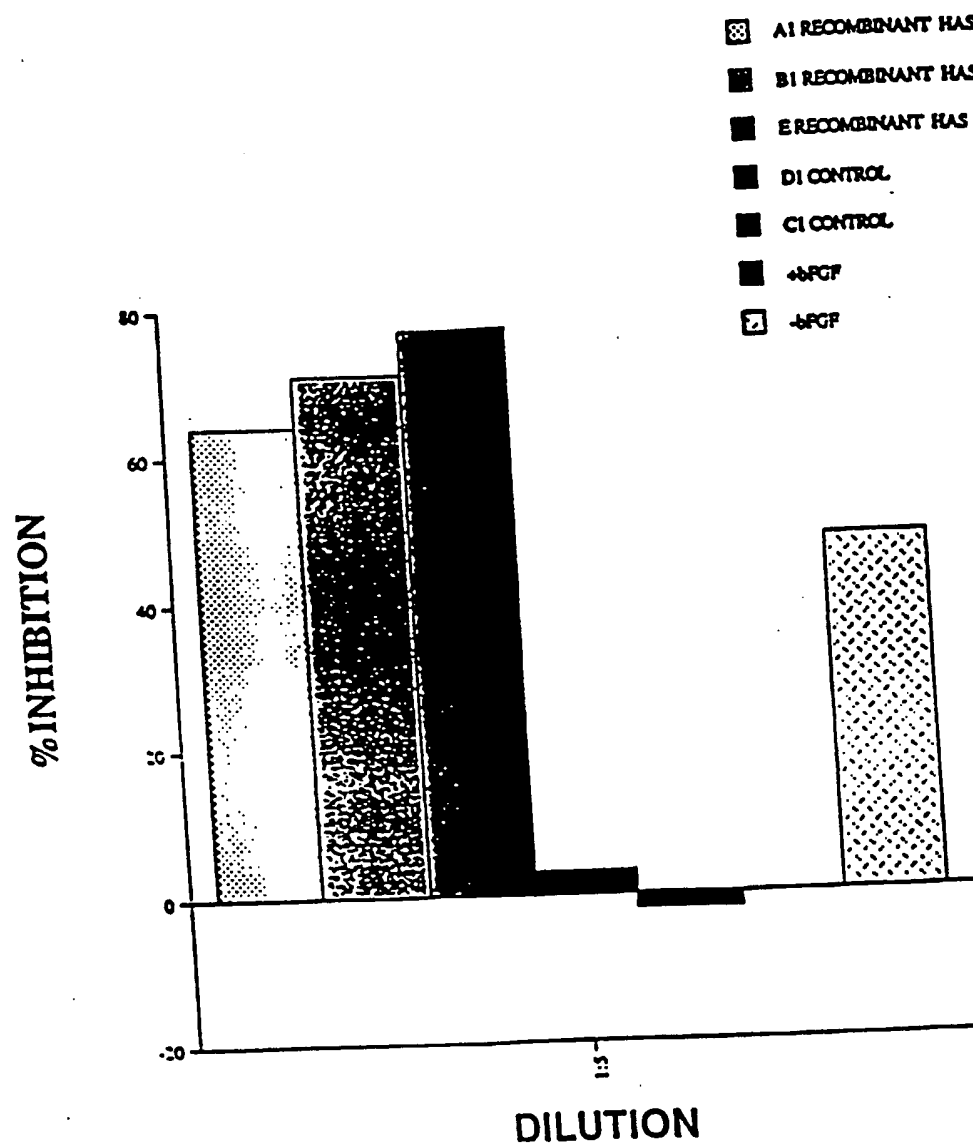


FIGURE 13

12/27

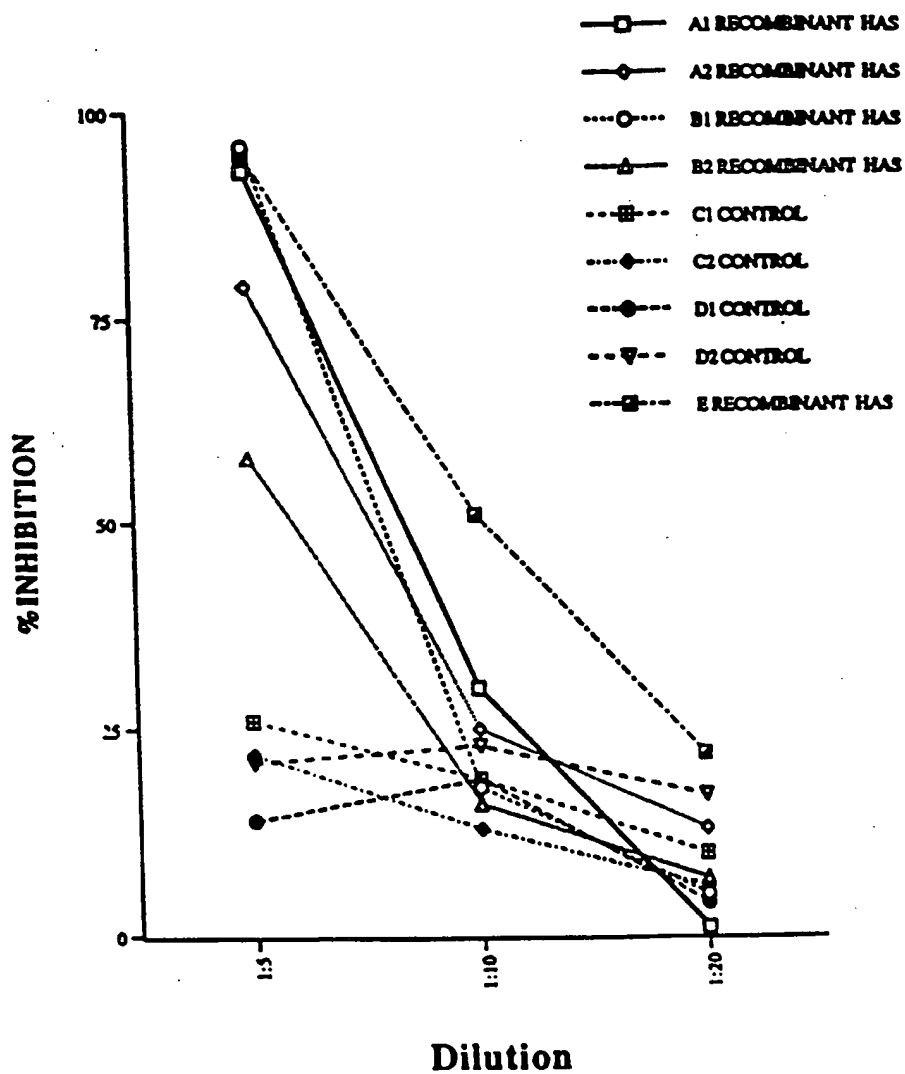


FIGURE 12

13/27

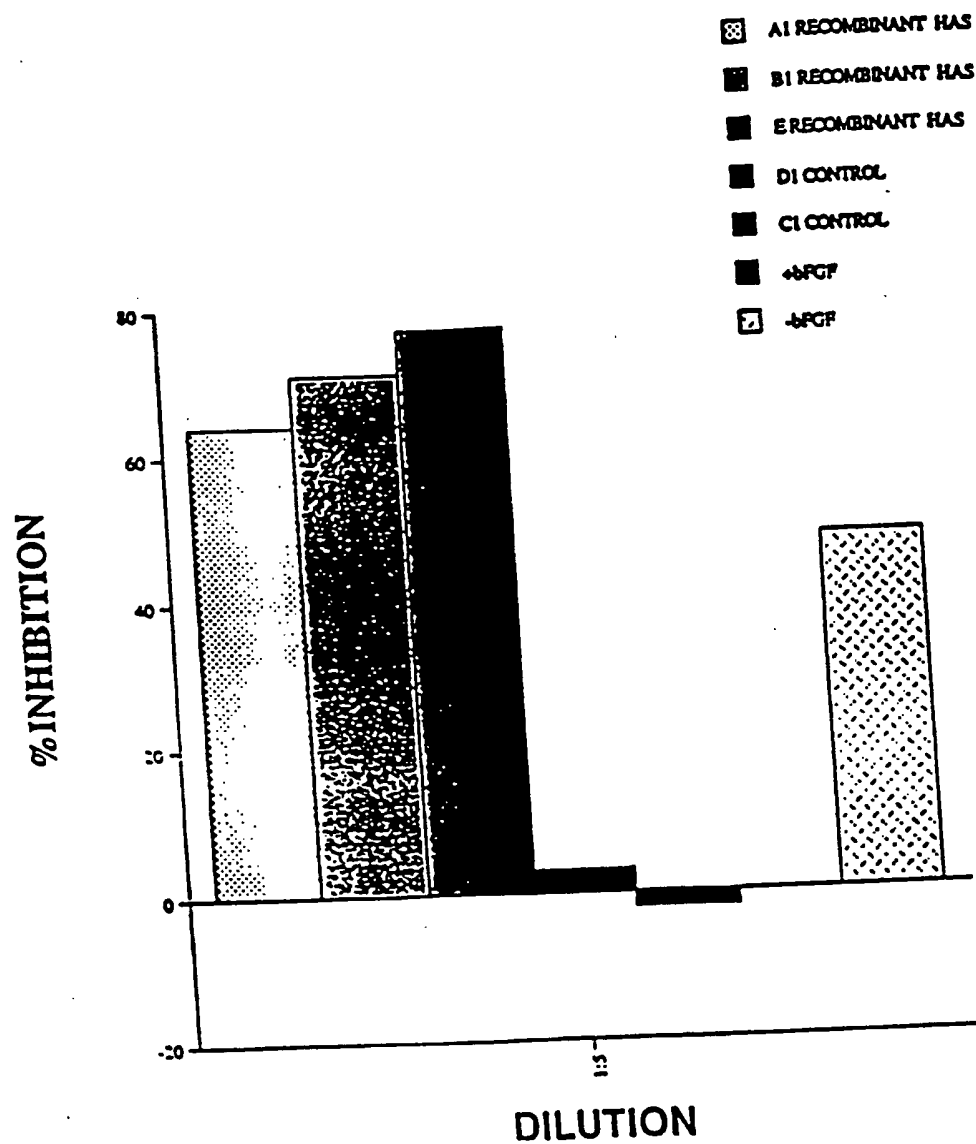
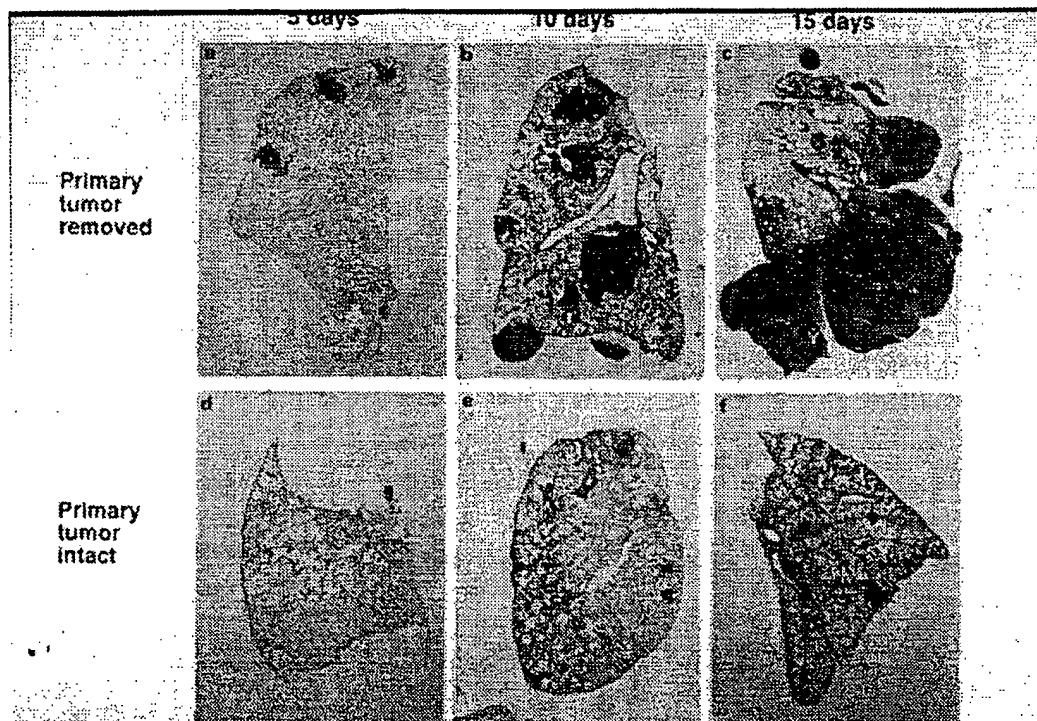


FIGURE 13



14/27



**FIGURE 14**

15/27

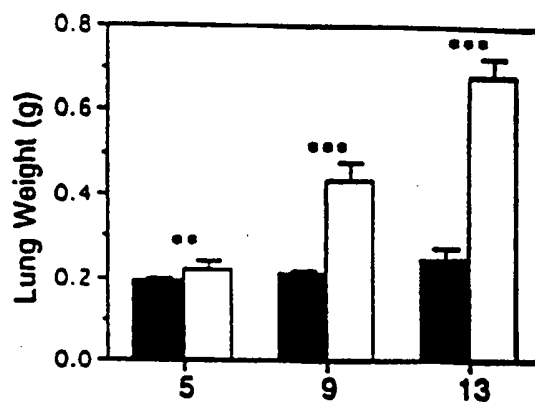


FIGURE 15A

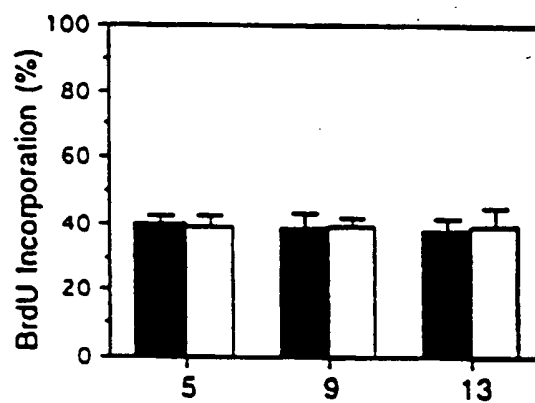


FIGURE 15B

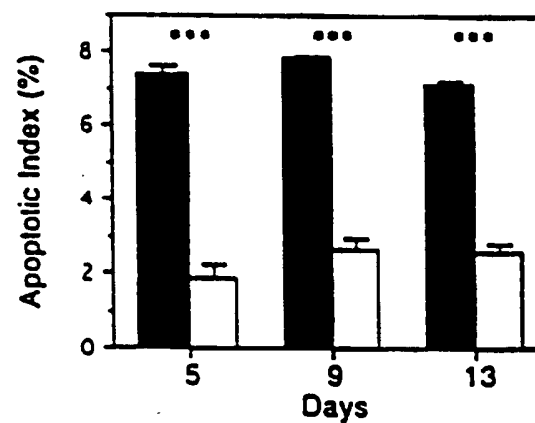


FIGURE 15C

14/27

**FIGURE 14**

15/27

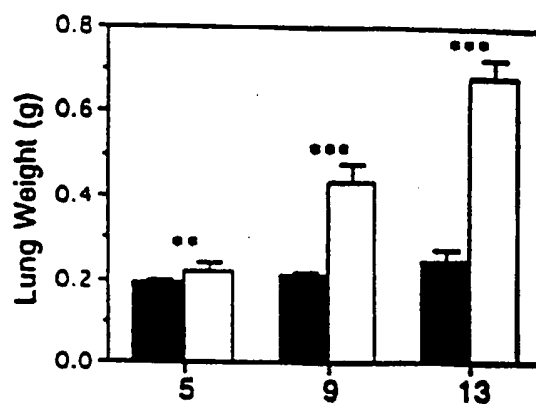


FIGURE 15A

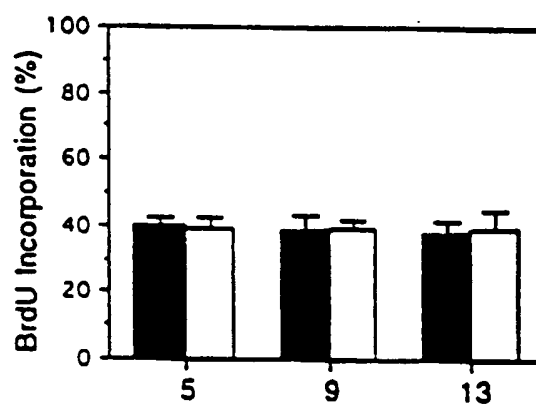


FIGURE 15B

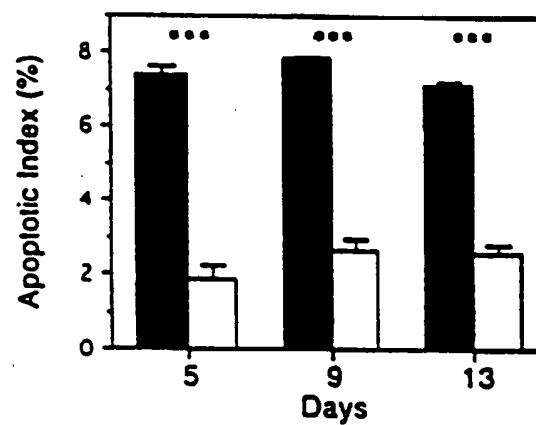


FIGURE 15C

16/27

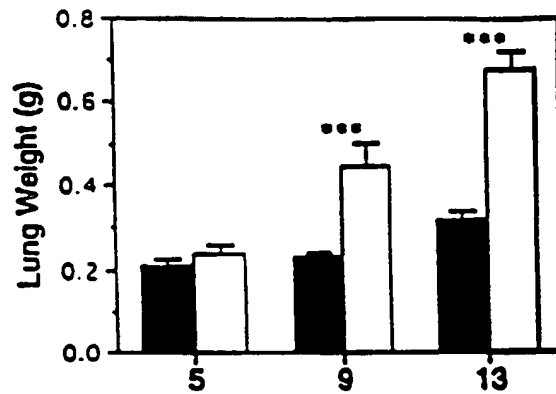


FIGURE 16A

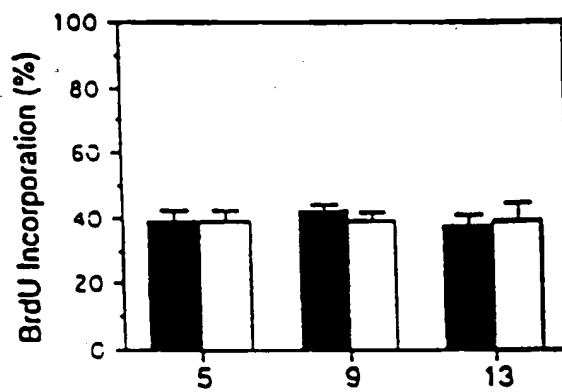


FIGURE 16B

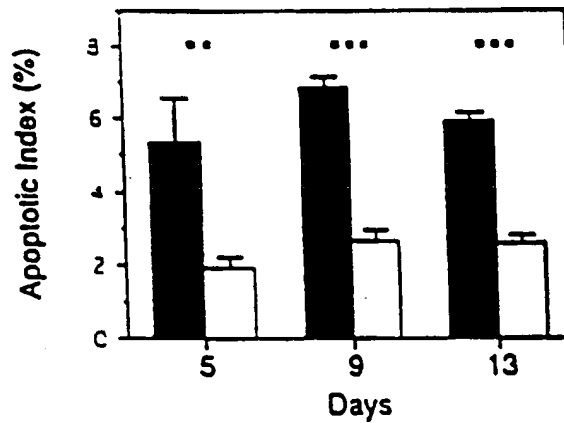


FIGURE 16C

17/27

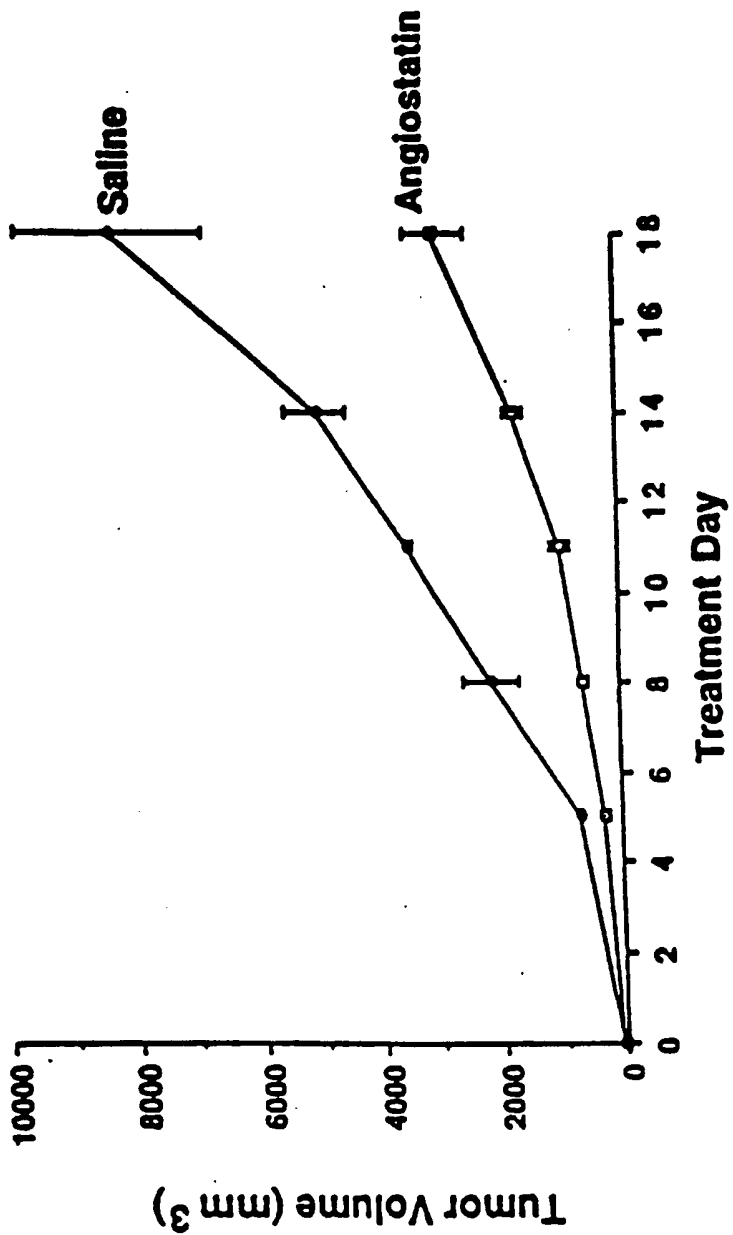


FIGURE 17

16/27

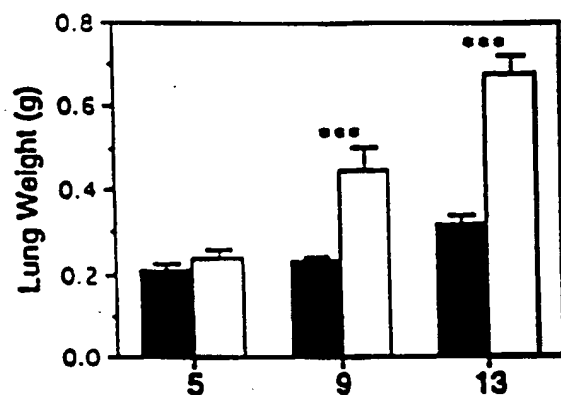


FIGURE 16A

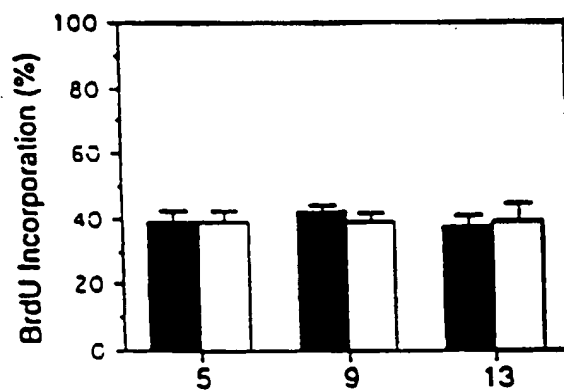


FIGURE 16B

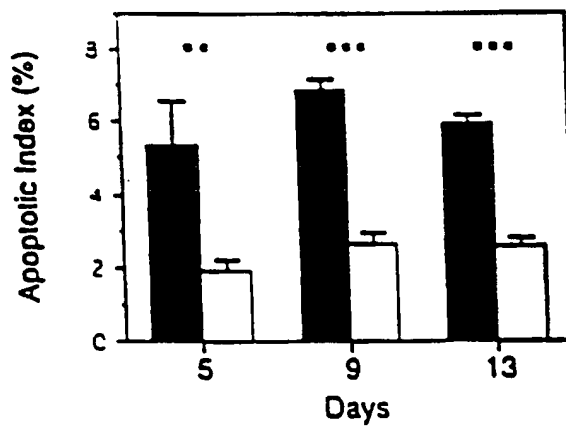


FIGURE 16C

17/27

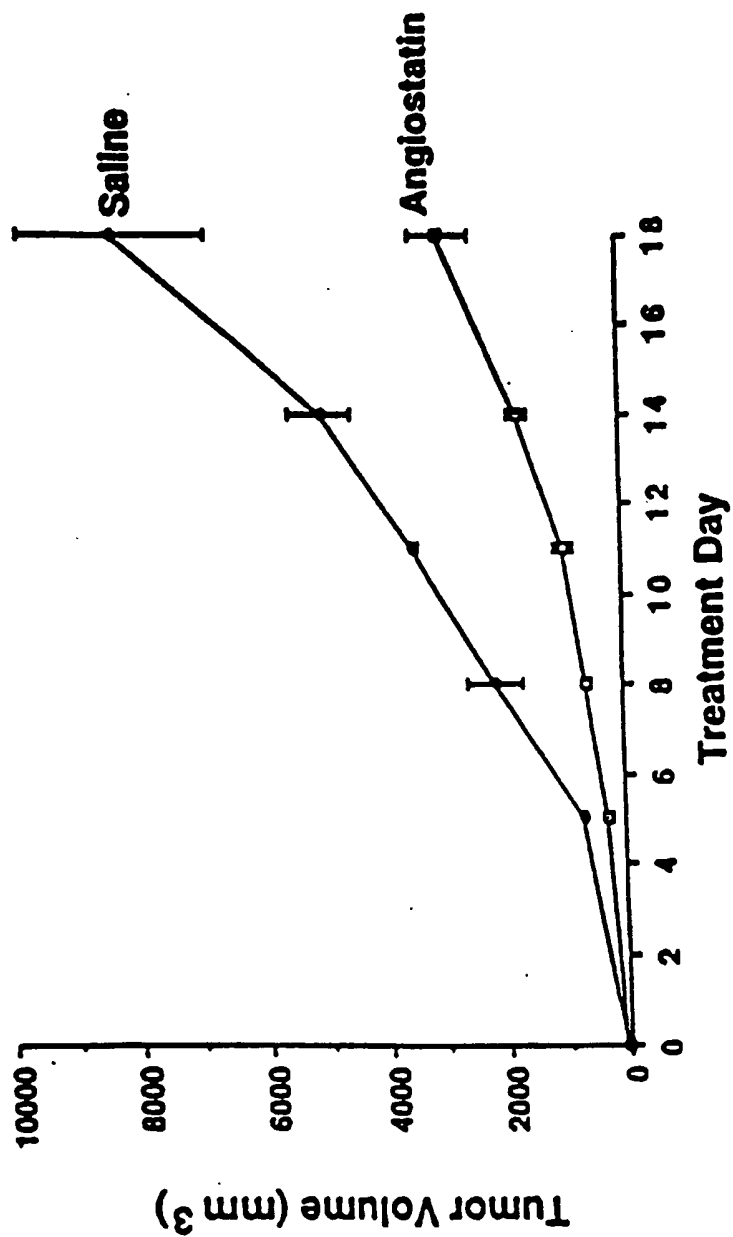


FIGURE 17



18/27

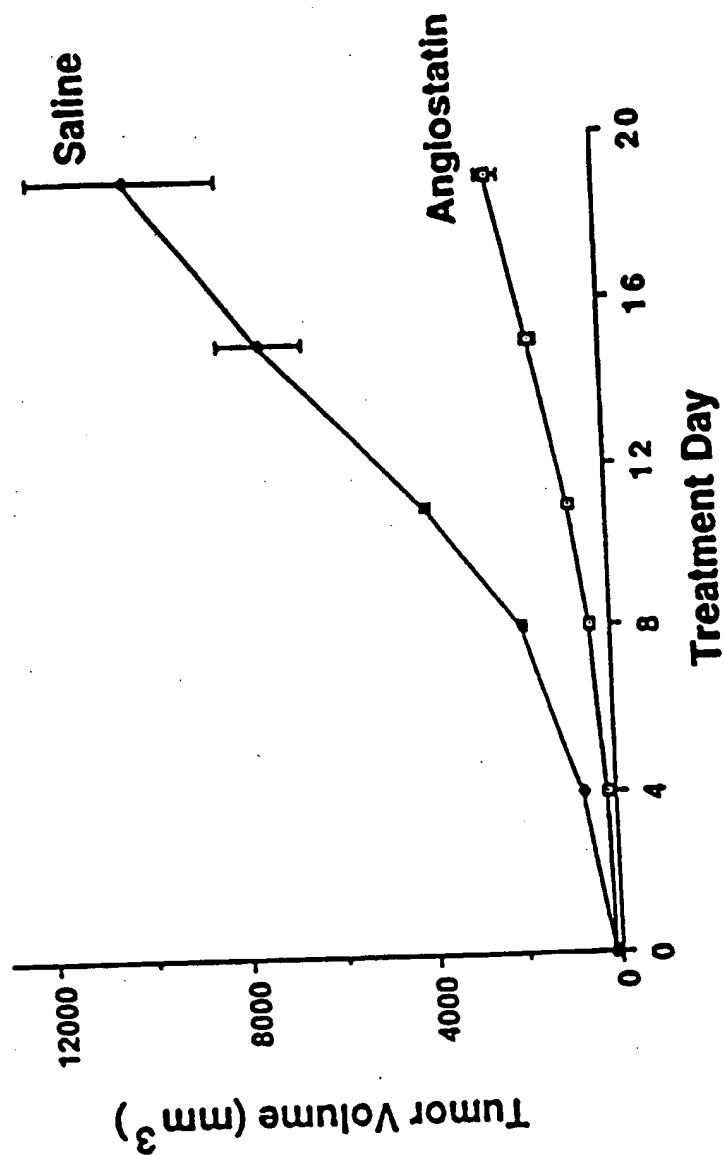


FIGURE 18

19/27

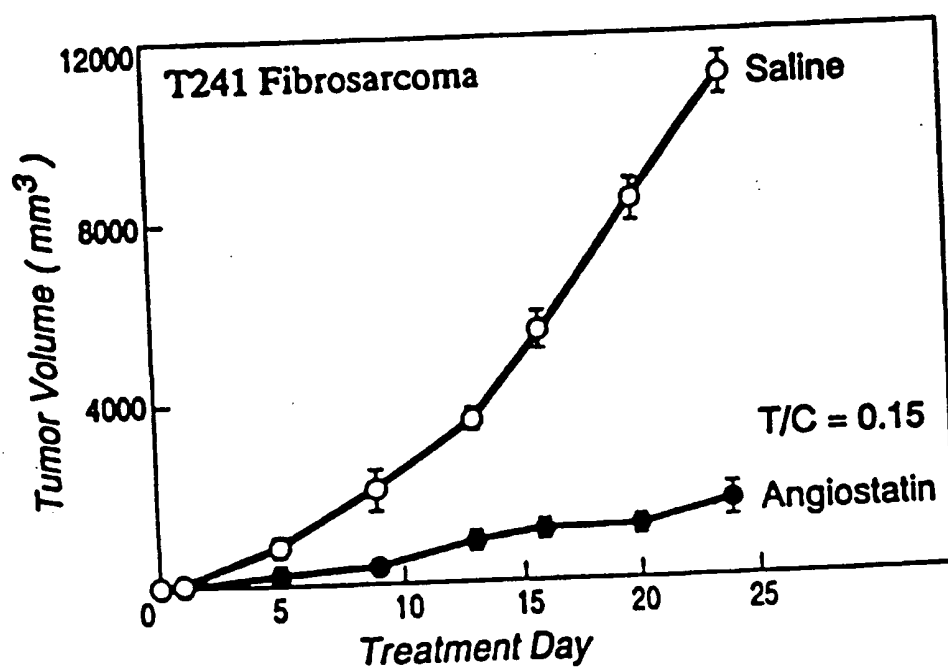


FIGURE 19

18/27

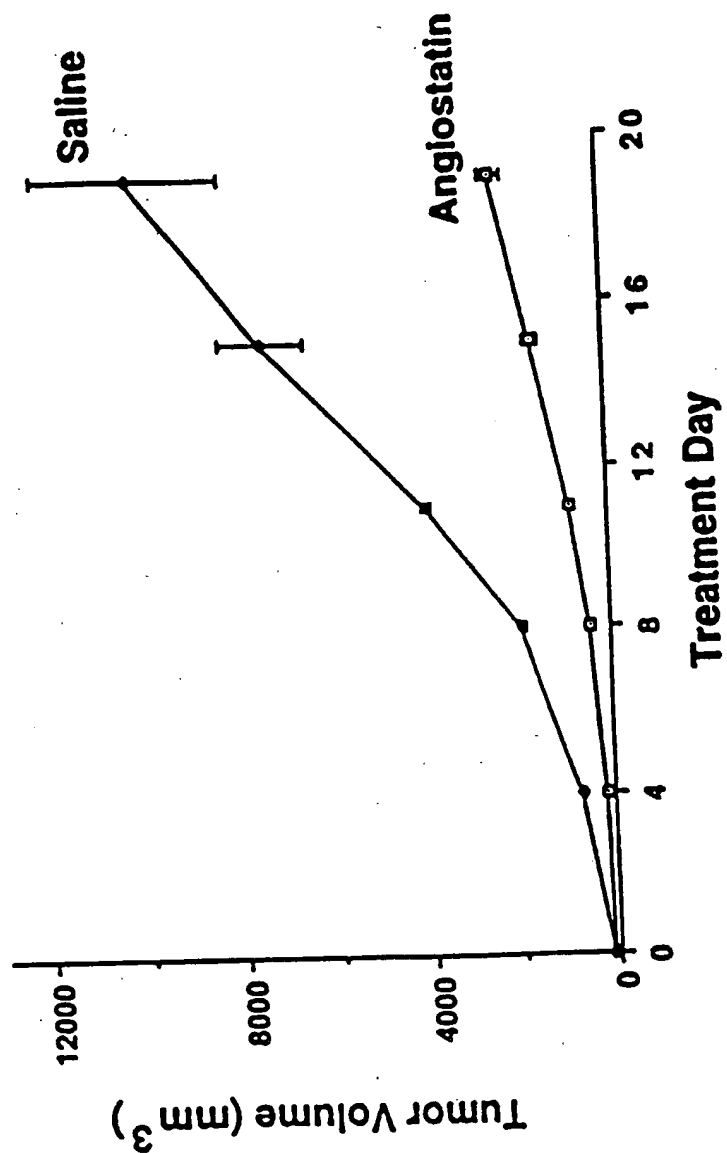
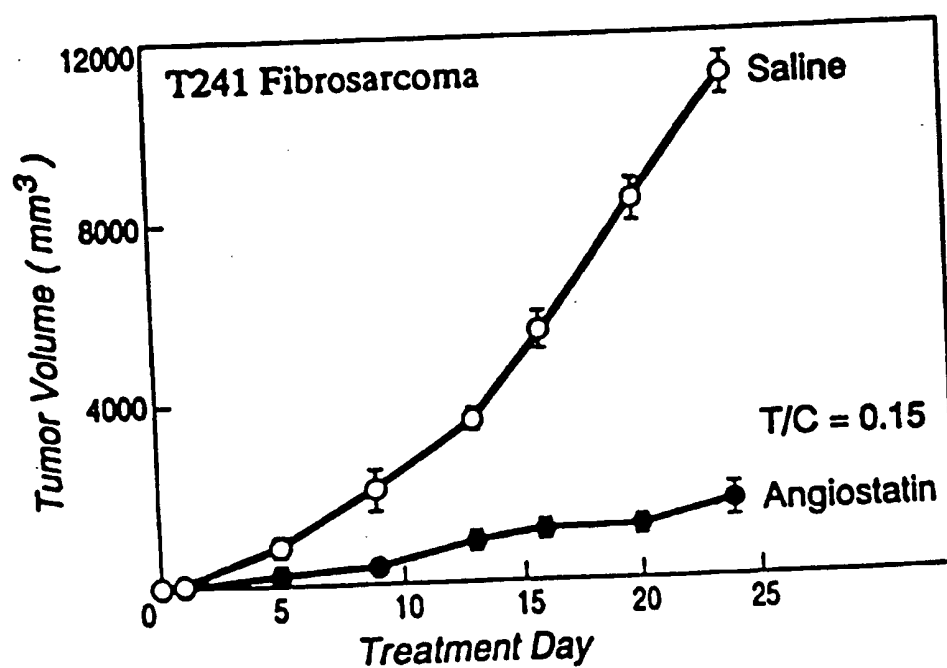


FIGURE 18

19/27

**FIGURE 19**

20/27

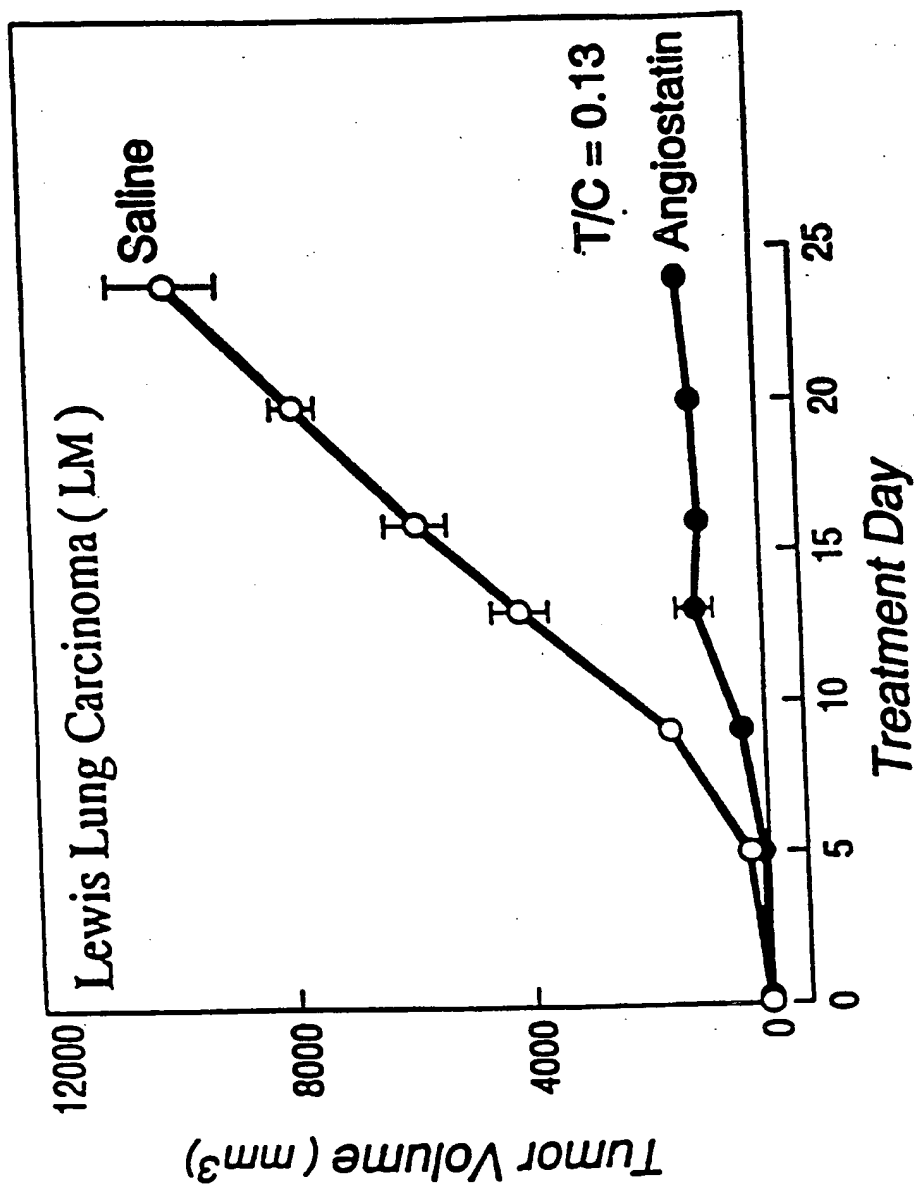


FIGURE 20

21/27

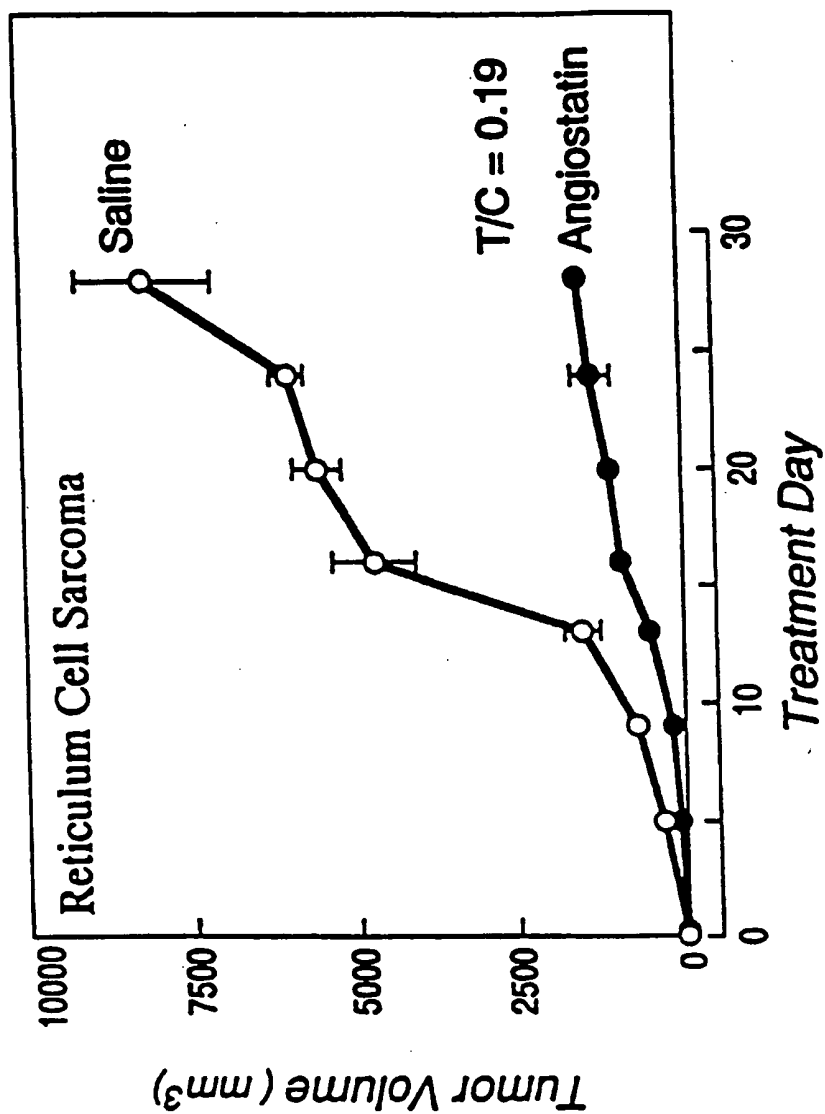


FIGURE 21

20/27

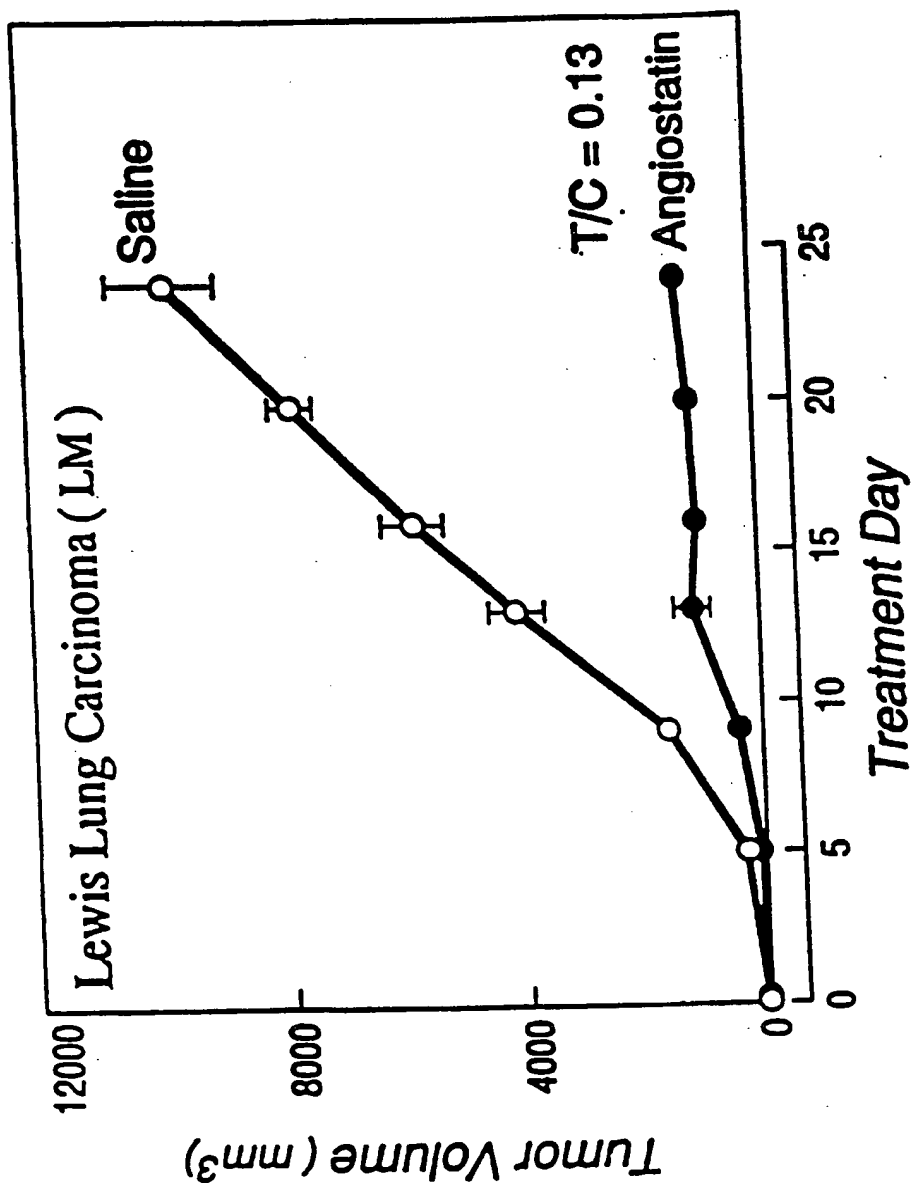


FIGURE 20

21/27

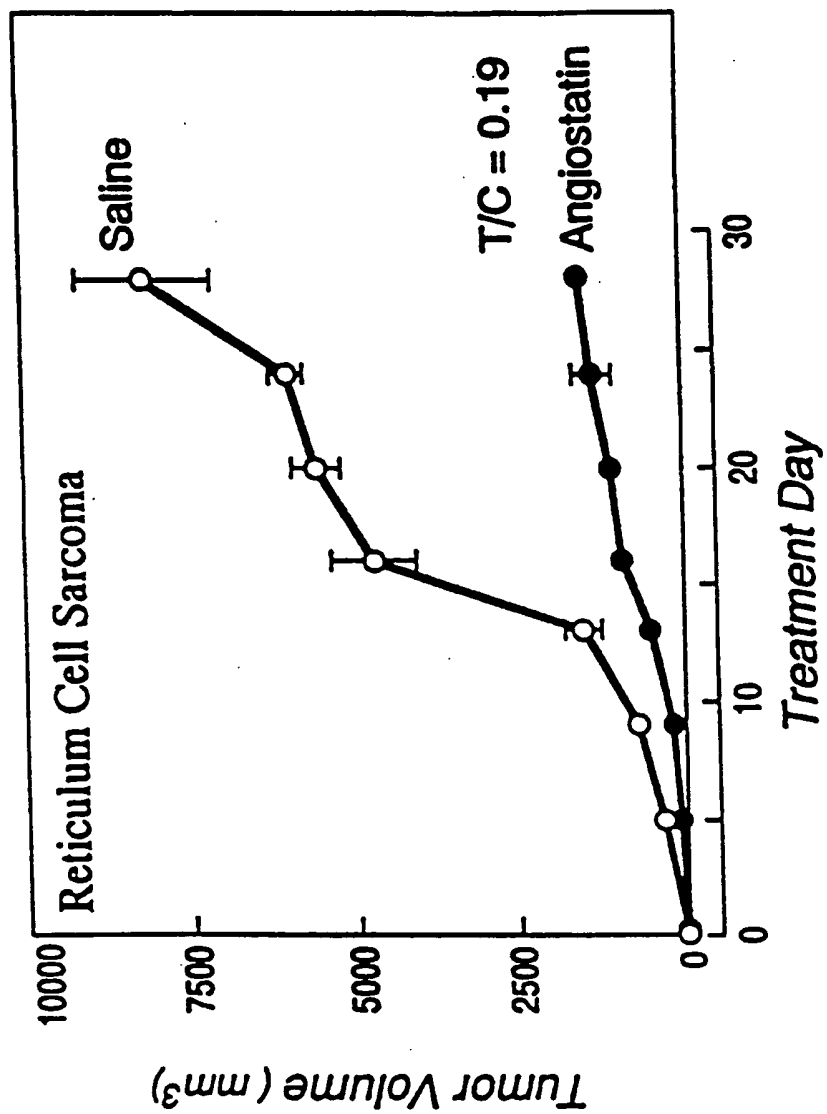


FIGURE 21



22/27

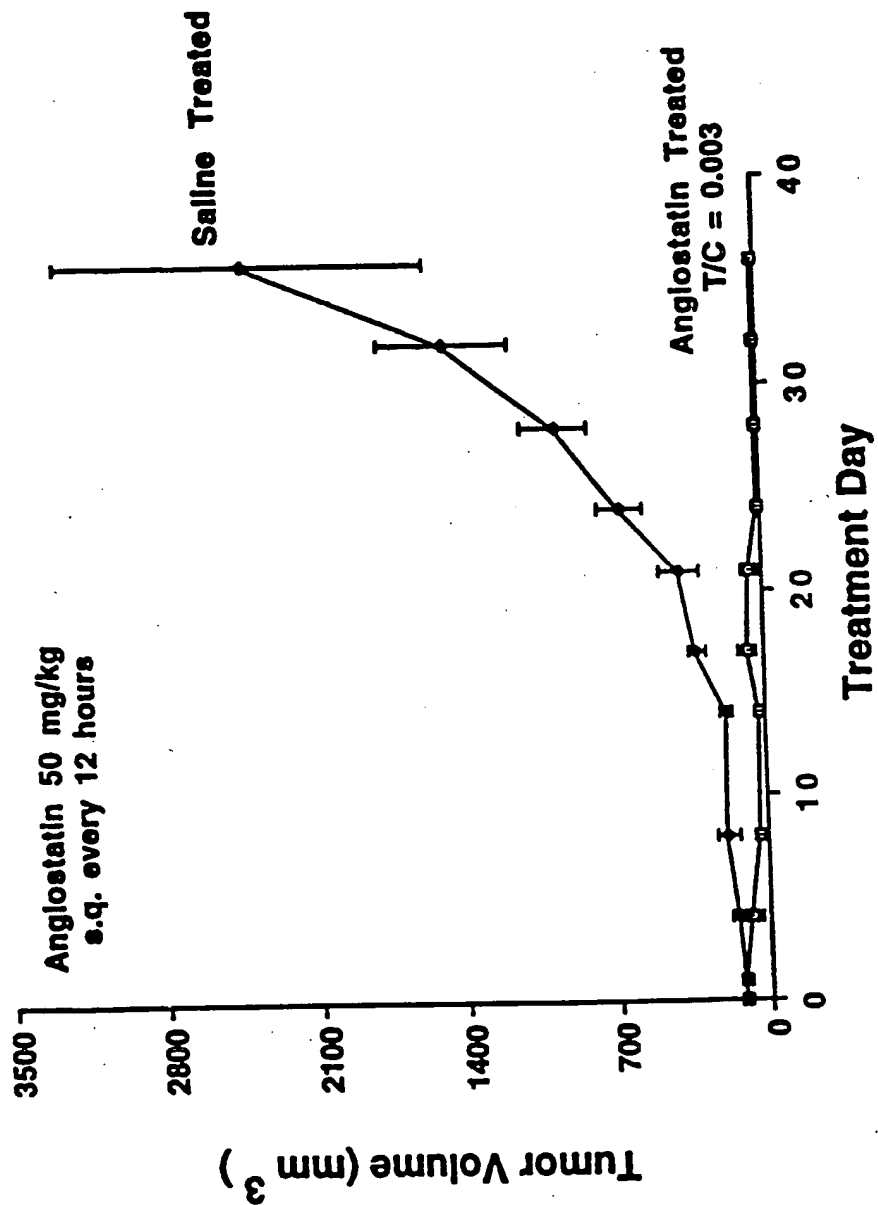


FIGURE 22

23/27

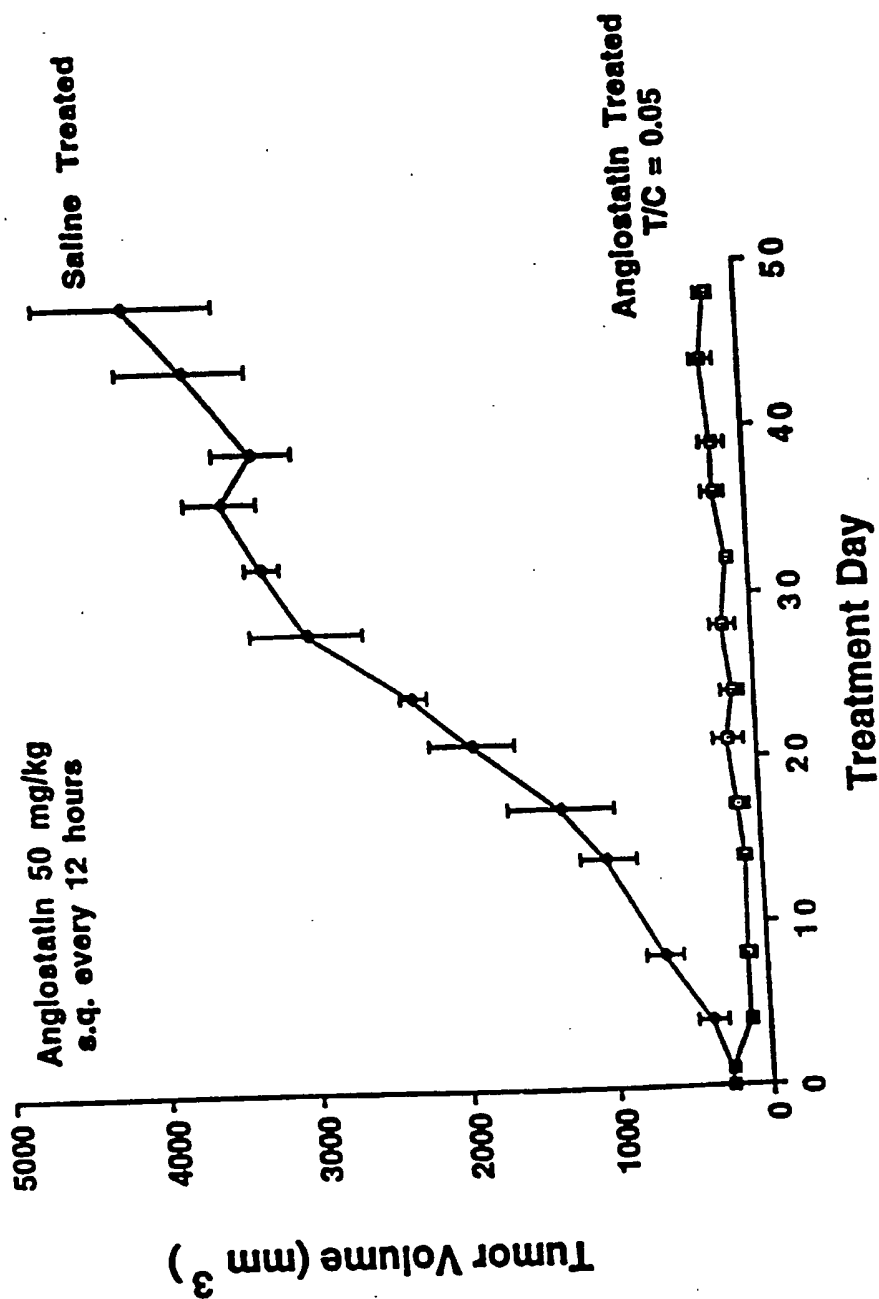


FIGURE 23

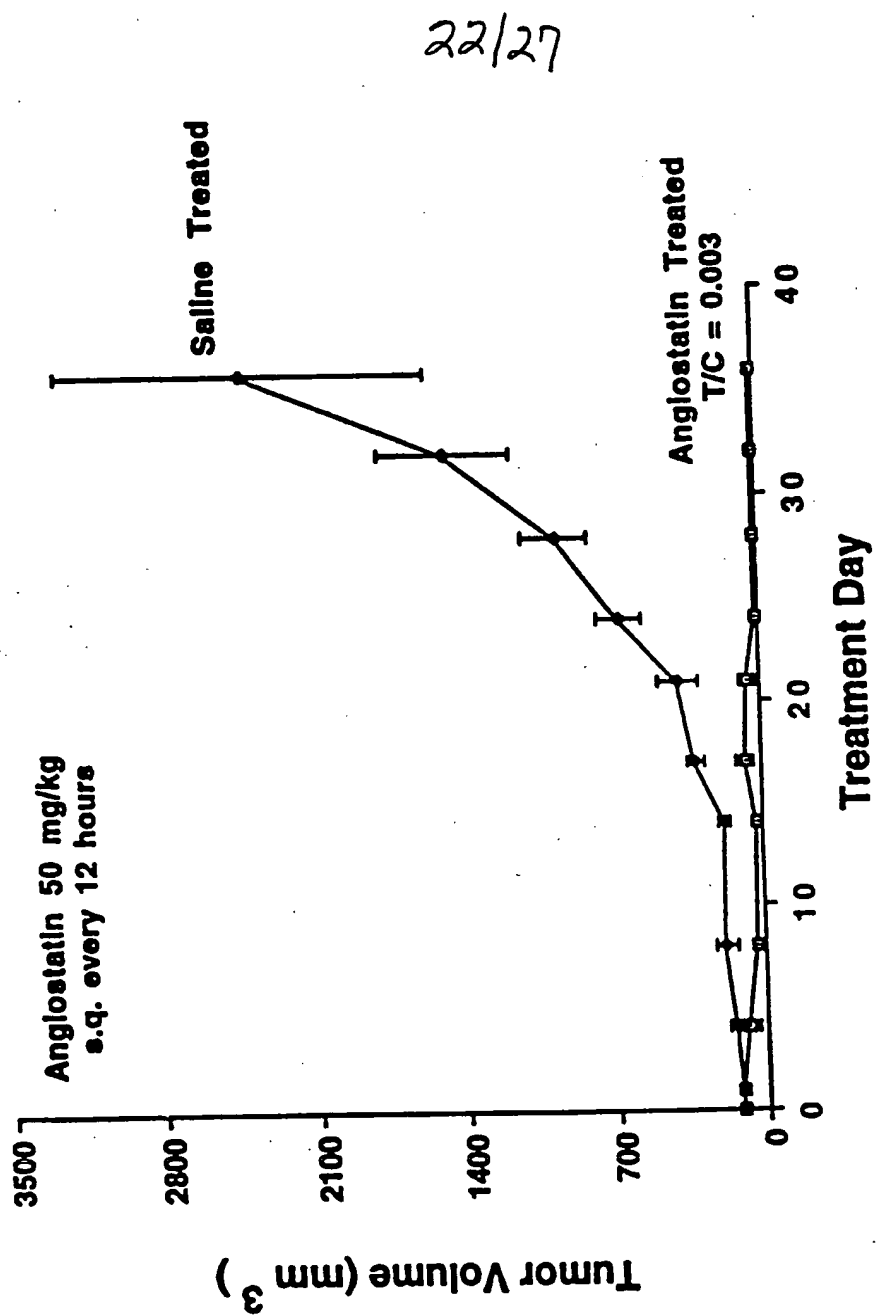


FIGURE 22

23/27

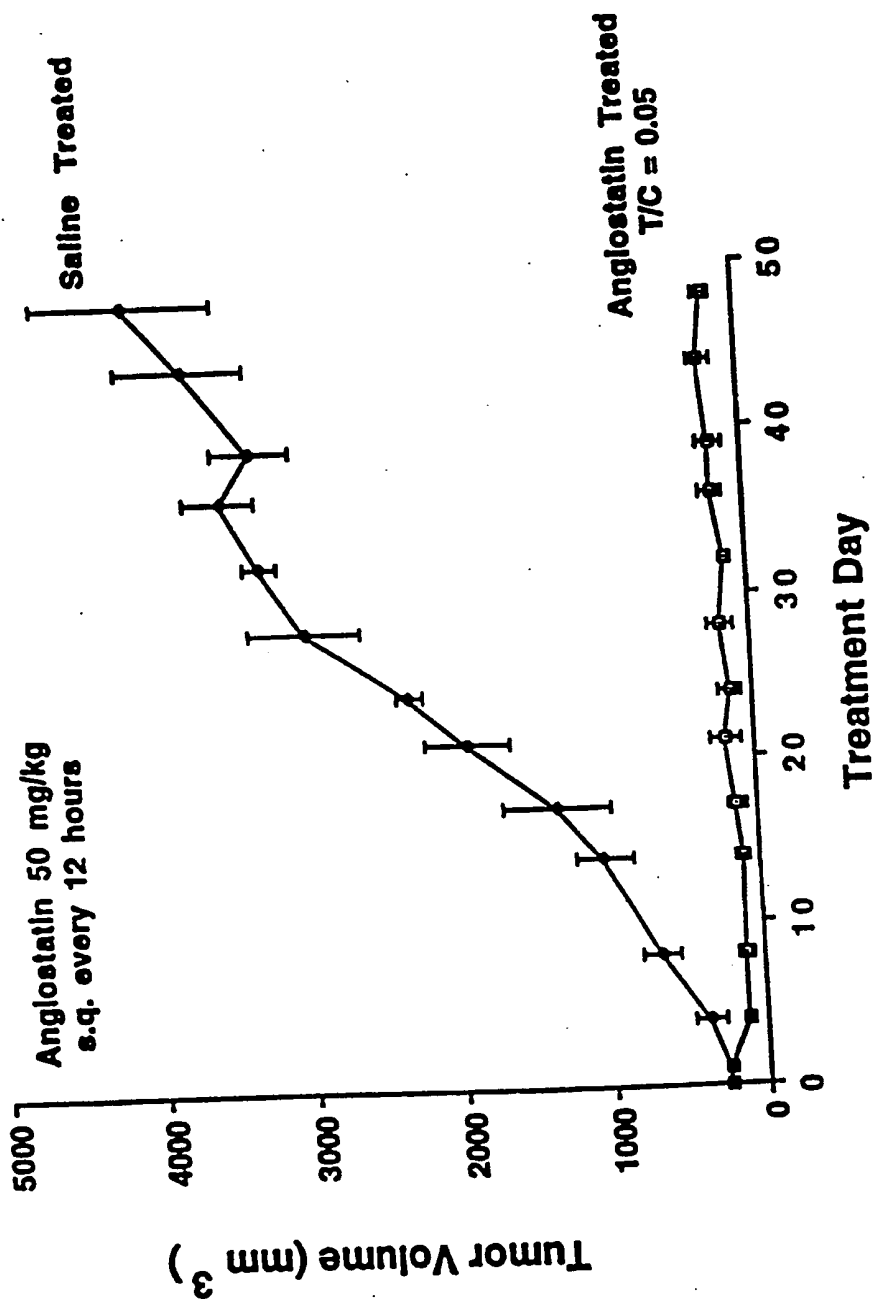


FIGURE 23

24/27

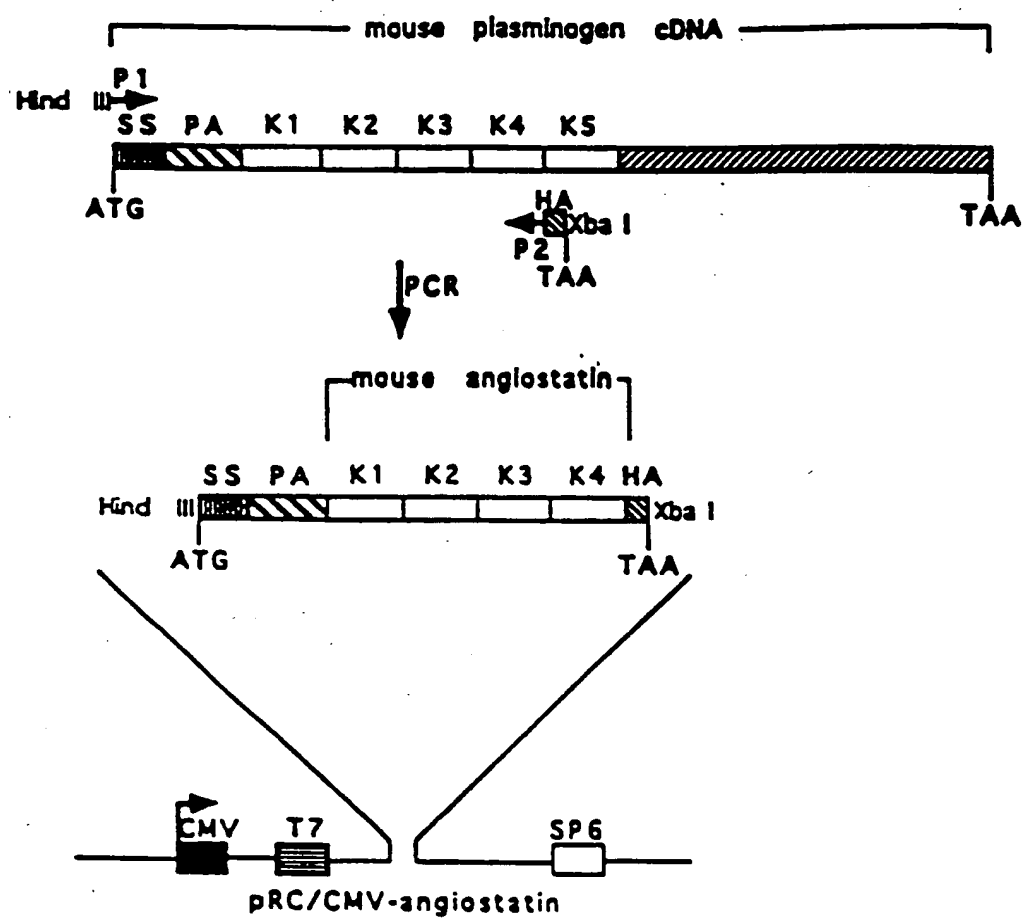


FIGURE 24

25/27

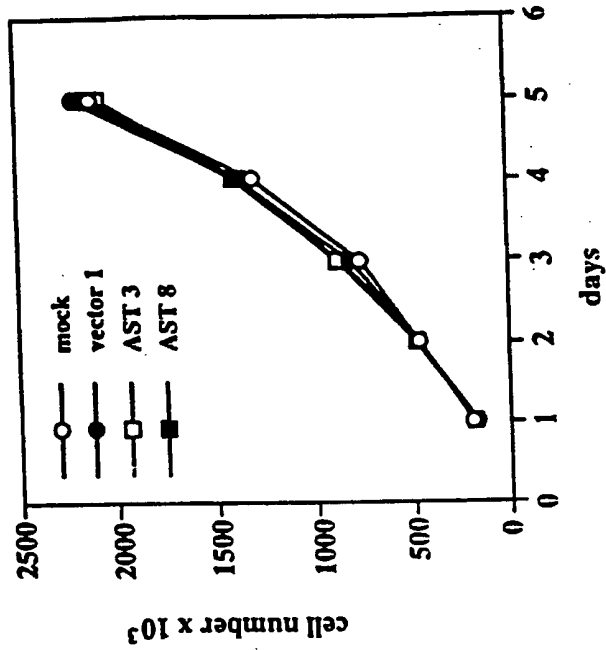


FIGURE 25B

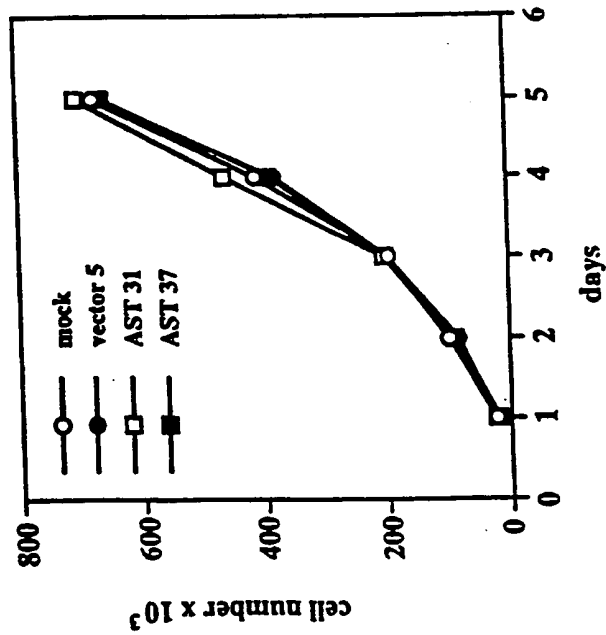


FIGURE 25A

24/27

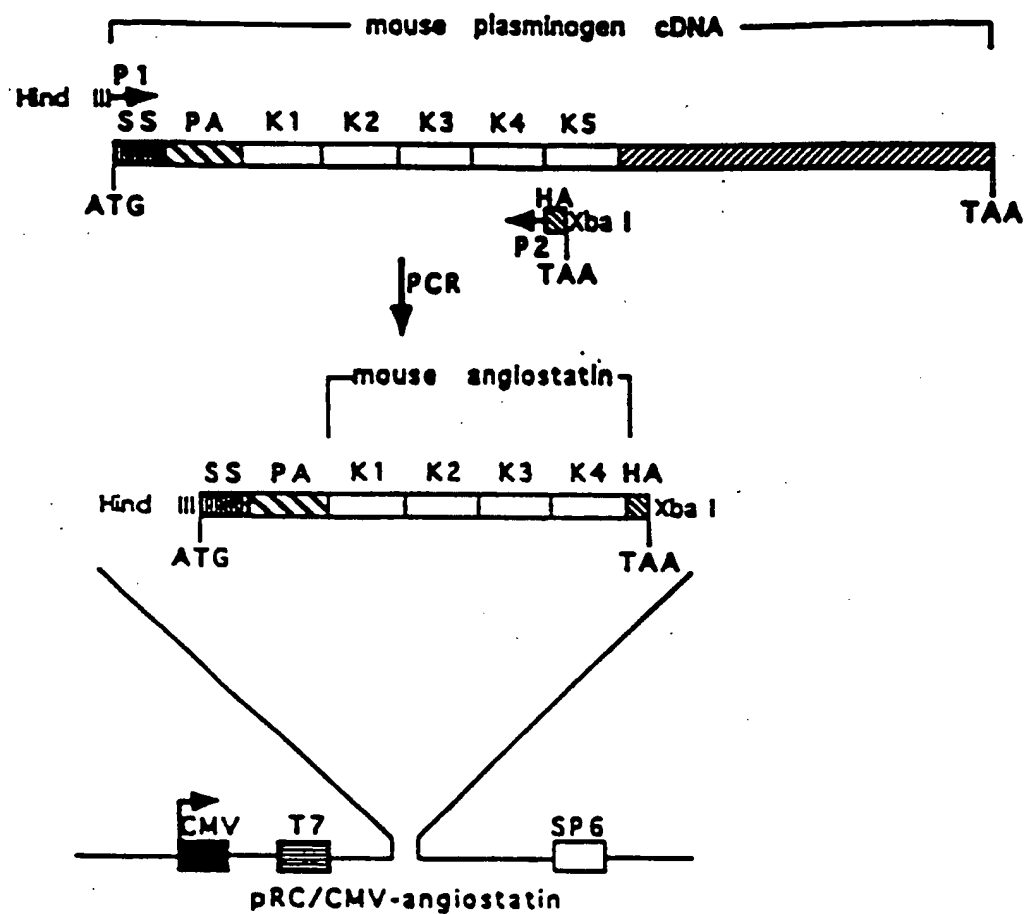


FIGURE 24

25/27

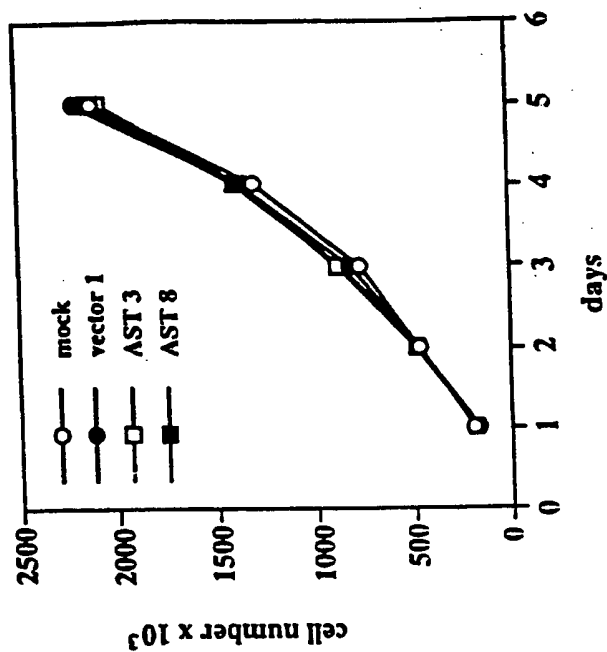


FIGURE 25B

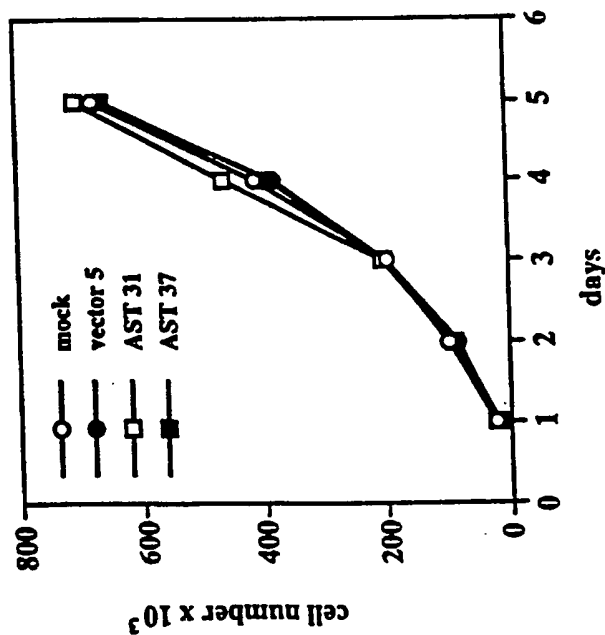


FIGURE 25A



26/27

FIGURE 26A

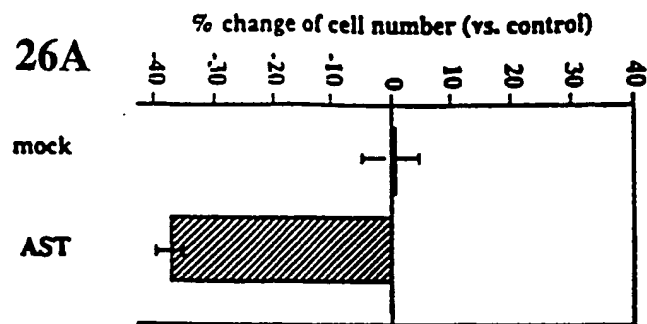


FIGURE 26B

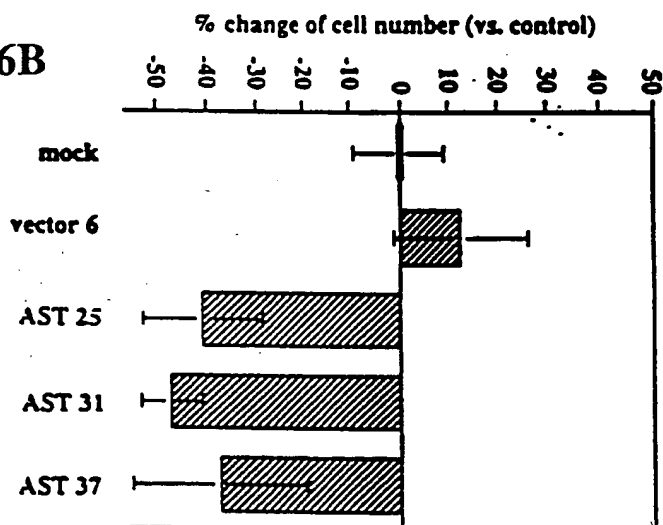
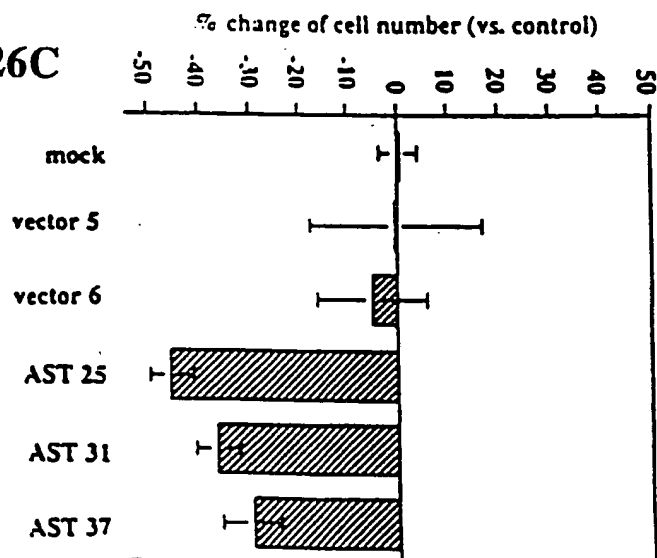
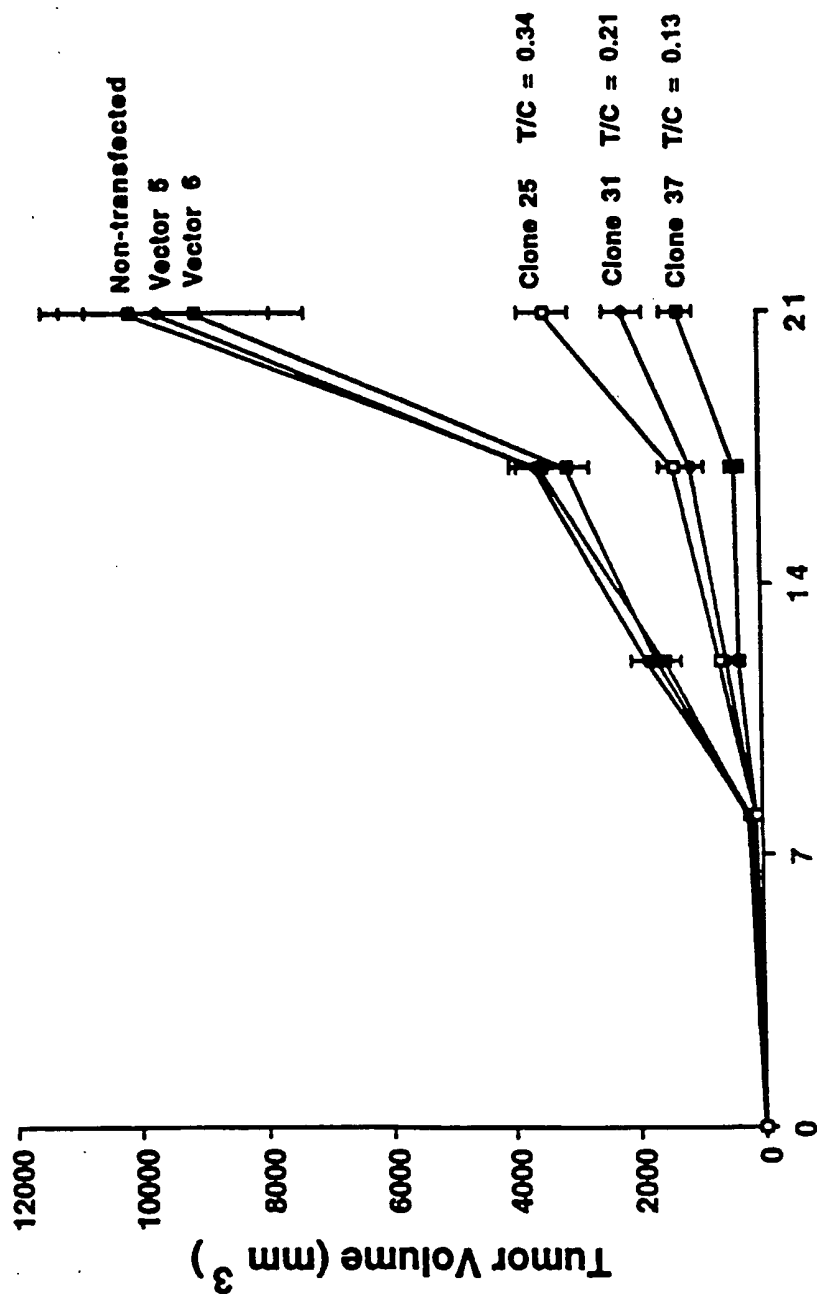


FIGURE 26C



27/27



Day After Implantation

FIGURE 27

26/27

FIGURE 26A

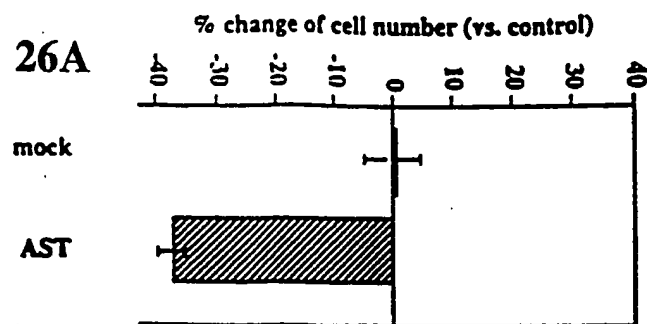


FIGURE 26B

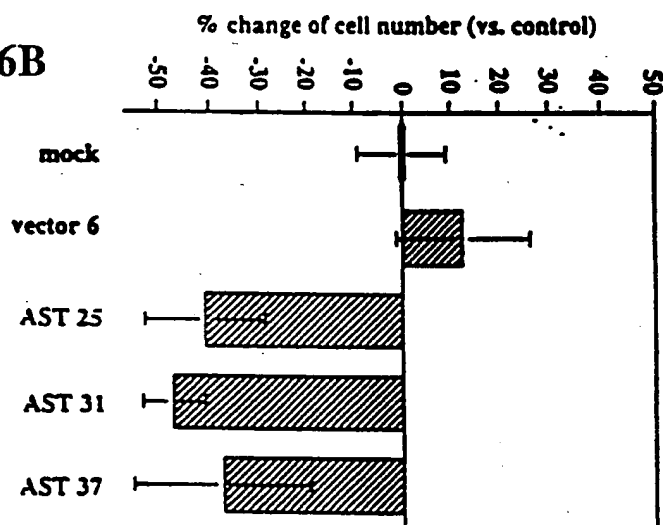
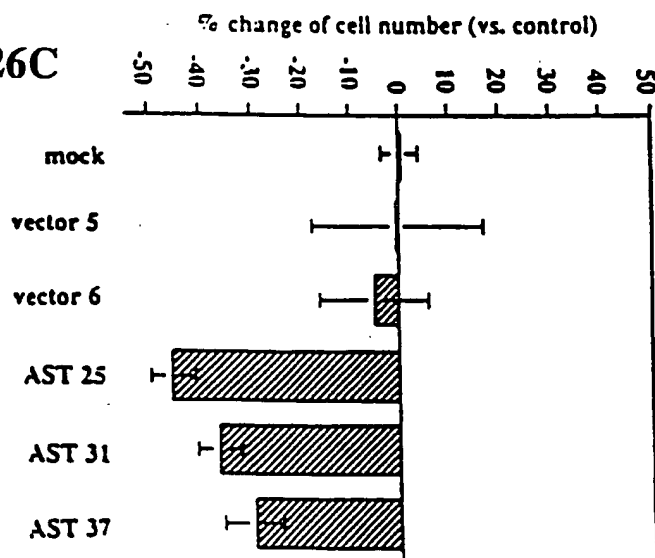
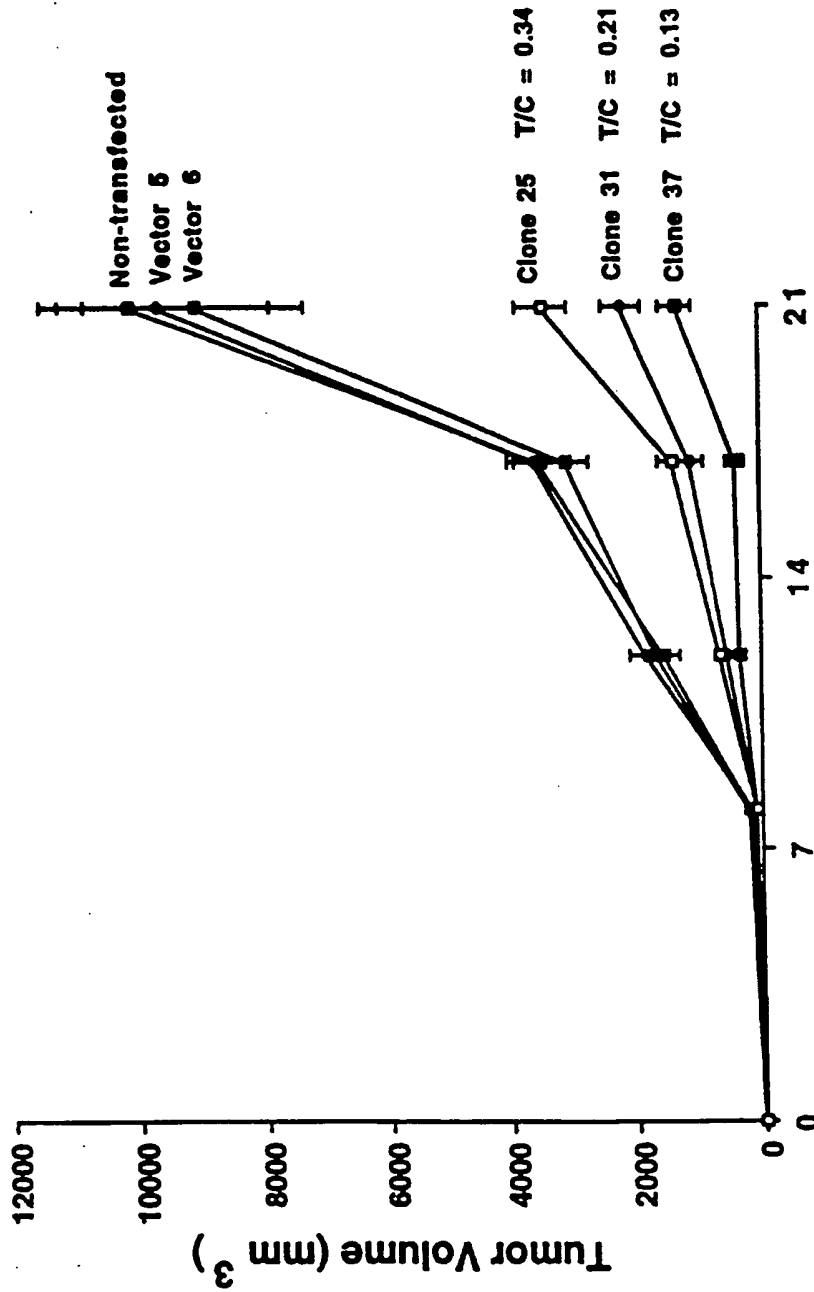


FIGURE 26C



27/27



Day After Implantation

FIGURE 27

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 95/05107

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 C12N15/57 C12N9/68 G01N33/68 C12N15/85 C12N5/06  
 A61K38/48 C07K16/40

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C12N G01N A61K C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DATABASE WPI Section Ch, Week 8315 Derwent Publications Ltd., London, GB; Class B04, AN 83-35370K & JP-A-58 036 391 ( SANKYO KK ) , 3 March 1983 see abstract ---	1
X	SURGICAL FORUM, vol. 44, 1993 pages 474-476, M. O'REILLY ET AL. 'The Suppression of Tumor metastases by a Primary Tumor' see page 476, paragraph 1 - paragraph 2 --- -/--	1,2, 5-11,14, 15,26-28



Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.



Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  
 "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date  
 "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)  
 "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  
 "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  
 "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone  
 "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.  
 "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

25 August 1995

Date of mailing of the international search report

15 08 95

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
 Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
 Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Fuhr, C

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 95/05107

C(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO-A-91 10424 (UNIV NORTHWESTERN) 25 July 1991  see claims; examples ---	1,2,5-8, 10,11, 14,15
A	SCIENCE, vol. 247, 5 January 1990 LANCASTER, PA US, pages 77-79, T.E. MAIONE ET AL. 'Inhibition of Angiogenesis by Recombinant Human Platelet Factor-4 and Related Peptides' see page 78, right column, paragraph 3 - page 79, left column, paragraph 1 ---	1,2,5-8, 10,11, 14,15
A	SCIENCE, vol. 248, 15 June 1990 LANCASTER, PA US, pages 1408-1410, M.A. MOSES ET AL. 'Identification of an Inhibitor of Neovascularization from Cartilage' see the whole document -----	1,2,5-8, 10,11, 14,15

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 95/05107

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 6 C12N15/57 C12N9/68 G01N33/68 C12N15/85 C12N5/06  
 A61K38/48 C07K16/40

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 6 C12N G01N A61K C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DATABASE WPI Section Ch, Week 8315 Derwent Publications Ltd., London, GB; Class B04, AN 83-35370K & JP-A-58 036 391 ( SANKYO KK ) , 3 March 1983 see abstract ---	1
X	SURGICAL FORUM, vol. 44, 1993 pages 474-476, M. O'REILLY ET AL. 'The Suppression of Tumor metastases by a Primary Tumor' see page 476, paragraph 1 - paragraph 2 --- -/--	1,2, 5-11,14, 15,26-28

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents :

- "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  
 "E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date  
 "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)  
 "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  
 "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- "T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  
 "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone  
 "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.  
 "&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

25 August 1995

Date of mailing of the international search report

15 08.95

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
 Tel. (+ 31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
 Fax (+ 31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Fuhr, C

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 95/05107

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO-A-91 10424 (UNIV NORTHWESTERN) 25 July 1991  see claims; examples ---	1,2,5-8, 10,11, 14,15
A	SCIENCE, vol. 247, 5 January 1990 LANCASTER, PA US, pages 77-79, T.E. MAIONE ET AL. 'Inhibition of Angiogenesis by Recombinant Human Platelet Factor-4 and Related Peptides' see page 78, right column, paragraph 3 - page 79, left column, paragraph 1 ---	1,2,5-8, 10,11, 14,15
A	SCIENCE, vol. 248, 15 June 1990 LANCASTER, PA US, pages 1408-1410, M.A. MOSES ET AL. 'Identification of an Inhibitor of Neovascularization from Cartilage' see the whole document -----	1,2,5-8, 10,11, 14,15



## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US95/05107

**Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item I of first sheet)**

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.: 10-14, 24  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 10-14, 24 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

**Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)**

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 95/05107

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO-A-9110424	25-07-91	US-A- 5192744	09-03-93
		AT-T- 126065	15-08-95
		EP-A- 0463152	02-01-92
		JP-T- 4504429	06-08-92
-----			

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US 95/ 05107

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.: 10-14, 24  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Remark: Although claims 10-14, 24 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 95/05107

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO-A-9110424	25-07-91	US-A- 5192744	09-03-93
		AT-T- 126065	15-08-95
		EP-A- 0463152	02-01-92
		JP-T- 4504429	06-08-92
-----			

**This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning  
Operations and is not part of the Official Record**

**BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ **BLACK BORDERS**
- ☐ **IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES**
- ☐ **FADED TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☒ **BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING**
- ☐ **SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES**
- ☐ **COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS**
- ☐ **GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS**
- ☐ **LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT**
- ☐ **REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY**
- ☐ **OTHER:** \_\_\_\_\_

**IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.**

**As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.**

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**